

ПРИДНЕСТРОВСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ

ИМ. Т.Г. ШЕВЧЕНКО

ФИЛОЛОГИЧЕСКИЙ ФАКУЛЬТЕТ

ЛИНГВОСТРАНОВЕДЕНИЕ

УЧЕБНО-МЕТОДИЧЕСКОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

**ДЛЯ СЛУШАТЕЛЕЙ ПРОГРАММЫ ДОПОЛНИТЕЛЬНОЙ
КВАЛИФИКАЦИИ**

**«ПЕРЕВОДЧИК В СФЕРЕ ПРОФЕССИОНАЛЬНОЙ
КВАЛИФИКАЦИИ»**

Тирасполь, 2020

Составитель: И.Б. Прокудина, старший преподаватель кафедры теории и практики перевода ПГУ им. Т.Г. Шевченко

Учебно-методическое пособие по лингвострановедению для слушателей программы дополнительной квалификации «Переводчик в сфере профессиональной коммуникации». – Тирасполь, 2020. – 262 с.

Учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для слушателей программы дополнительной квалификации «Переводчик в сфере профессиональной квалификации».

Пособие имеет целью ознакомление студентов дополнительного образования со страноведческой информацией, при изучении которой необходимо систематически отрабатывать произношения трудных слов, знакомиться с новой лексикой, закреплять слова и словосочетания с национально-культурным компонентом, входящие в активный словарь уроков, а также предусматривает развитие навыков устной речи по темам: “Great Britain”, “The United States of America”, “English-speaking countries: Canada, Australia and New Zealand”.

Данное пособие состоит из 18 уроков. В каждом уроке содержится основной текстовый материал, который студент должен освоить, примечания к тексту, в которых даётся объяснение реалий, ознакомление с историческими именами и датами. Каждый урок учебного пособия содержит комплекс упражнений: фонетических, лексических, коммуникативных, переводческих.

Учебно-методическое пособие рассчитано на 36 часов обучения. На каждый урок отводится 2 часа аудиторных занятий.

*Рецензенты: **О.В. Балан**, к.п.н., доцент кафедры английской филологии ПГУ им. Т.Г. Шевченко;*

***Л.Л. Костаи**, ст. преподаватель высшей категории кафедры теории и практики перевода ПГУ им. Т.Г. Шевченко;*

Прокудина И.Б., 2020

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

Предисловие.....	4-5
------------------	-----

PART I

UNIT I: GREAT BRITAIN

Lesson 1 UK basic facts: geographical and historical features, national symbols.....	6-18
Lesson 2 England: Stonehenge.....	20-22
Lesson 3 Brief overview of Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Counties and regions. Cities and towns.....	23-36
Lesson 4 London: the City, Westminster, the West End, the East End.....	37-59
Lesson 5 London Museums.....	60-72
Lesson 6 The Important Areas of British Life.....	73-108
Lesson 7 Country and People: traditions and social life of the British people.....	109-150
Lesson 8 Political System of England.....	151-161
Lesson 9 Monarchy as a system of Government. Coronation ceremony and Royal Regalia.....	162-172
Lesson 10 Famous British People.....	173-178

PART II

UNIT II: THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Lesson 1 Portrait of the USA: National Symbols. Natural Features, National Parks.....	179-197
Lesson 2 The largest cities of the USA: Washington, New York.....	198-211
Lesson 3 Political life of the USA. Separation of Powers.....	212-217
Lesson 4 Political parties. Presidential Election.....	218-223
Lesson 5 Outstanding American Presidents.....	224-235

PART III

UNIT III: THE ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

Lesson 1 Canada. Land of Diversity.....	236-244
Lesson 2 Australia, its identity and spirit.....	245-255
Lesson 3 New Zealand as a unique island country.....	256-260
Литература	261-262

Предисловие

Настоящее учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для использования в преподавании практического курса по лингвострановедению (по истории, географии и культуре Великобритании, Америки и других англоязычных стран) для слушателей программы дополнительной квалификации «Переводчик в сфере профессиональной квалификации».

Цель данного учебно-методического пособия - вырабатывать переводческие навыки студентов дополнительного образования, развивать способности речевого общения на английском языке, - в конечном итоге, формировать языковую, коммуникативную и лингвострановедческую компетенцию. Базовая составляющая для пособия – использование страноведческой информации.

Учебно-методическое пособие соответствует требованиям рабочей программы по учебной дисциплине «Лингвострановедение».

В первую часть учебного пособия **“GREAT BRITAIN”** вошли разделы, посвящённые следующим темам: географическое положение страны, основные символы государства, самые большие города Британии, традиции и обычаи англичан, политическая система, основные символы монархии, выдающиеся британцы.

Во вторую часть учебного пособия **“THE USA”** вошли разделы, посвящённые следующим темам: основные символы государства, столица Америки и её большие и значимые города, флора и фауна национальных парков, традиционные праздники американцев, политическая система, выдающиеся президенты Америки.

В третью часть учебного пособия **“ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES”** вошли разделы, посвящённые обзорному ознакомлению с такими странами, как: Канада, Австралия и Новая Зеландия.

Учебная цель определили комбинированный характер упражнений.

В учебном пособии представлено 3 раздела, каждый из которых включает от 3 до 10 уроков (в зависимости от темы). В каждом уроке содержится основной текстовый материал, который студент должен освоить (прочитать, перевести с английского языка на русский и выявить основные моменты для обсуждения на практических занятиях и подготовить презентацию), примечания к тексту, в которых даётся объяснение реалий, ознакомление с историческими именами и датами.

Каждый урок учебного пособия содержит комплекс упражнений:

1. Фонетические упражнения “Practice the following for pronunciation” предназначены для систематической отработки произношения трудных слов, а именно: географических названий и терминов.

2. Лексические упражнения “Vocabulary exercises” направлены на отработку новой лексики, закрепления слов и словосочетаний с национально-культурным компонентом, входящих в активный словарь урока. Значение новой лексики к текстам представлено либо через перевод на русский язык, либо при помощи других приёмов, в первую очередь, через лексическое значение слов.

3. Речевые или коммуникативные упражнения “Oral Language Practice” направлены на отработку навыков говорения с опорой на текст, развитие у студентов навыков устной речи и предполагают выработку умения связно высказываться, отвечать на конкретно поставленные вопросы.

Большое внимание уделяется переводческим упражнениям с русского языка на английский, используя упражнение **Test-Translation**, который может выполняться как в устной, так и в письменной форме.

В учебном пособии представлены только тексты, которые предназначены для самостоятельной работы со словарём. Они могут быть использованы для подготовки как индивидуальных докладов и презентаций, так и для фронтального опроса и обсуждений. В более продвинутых группах предлагается дополнительный материал для чтения и перевода, который не вошёл в это пособие.

Количество часов, отводимых на каждый урок, определяется преподавателем в зависимости от полноты прохождения материала.

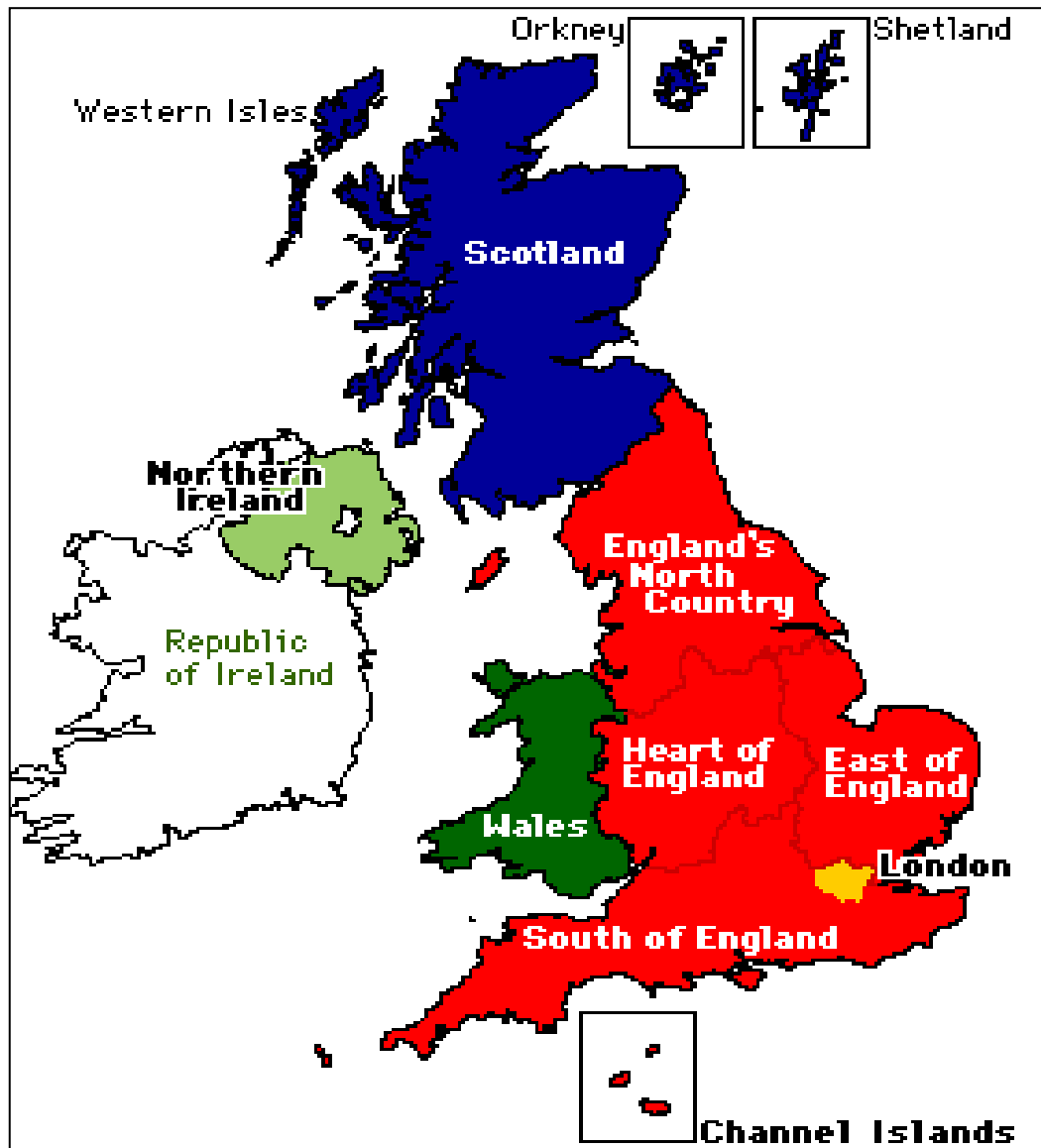
Каждый последующий раздел данного пособия, является, с одной стороны, шагом в изучении страноведческого материала, а с другой – ступенью развития переводческой компетенции и обучения общению на английском языке. Студенты доп.образования – это, в основном, специалисты, связанные в своей работе с английским языком, которым на современном этапе развития общества придётся выступать на конференциях с презентациями на английском языке, ездить по разным странам и общаться с коллегами из других стран, поэтому знание не только языка, но и культуры англоязычных стран поможет им чувствовать себя уверенней.

Использование в процессе обучения данного пособия слушателей программы дополнительной квалификации «Переводчик в сфере профессиональной квалификации» позволяет преподавателю, варьируя формы учебной работы со студентами, повысить качество усвоения учебного материала. Страноведческая направленность текстов пособия способствует усвоению студентами элементов иноязычной культуры, повышению познавательной активности обучаемых, созданию у них положительной мотивации, наконец, в процессе обучения вырабатываются переводческие навыки. Всё это необходимо переводчику – посреднику между двумя лингвокультурами.

PART I

UNIT I

GREAT BRITAIN



Lesson 1

UK BASIC FACTS

Geographical and historical features

National Symbols

Geographically speaking

Lying off the north-west coast of Europe, there are two large islands and several much smaller ones. Collectively, they are known as **the British Isles**. The largest island is called **Great Britain**. The other large one is called **Ireland**.

The British Isles consist of about five thousand small islands, the main of which are **the Isle of Wight** in the English Channel, **Anglesea** and **the Isle of Man** in the Irish Sea, **the Hebrides** – a group of islands off the north-western coast of Scotland, and two groups of islands lying to the north of Scotland: **the Orkney Islands** and **the Shetland Islands**. But the United Kingdom doesn't include **the Isle of Man** and **the Channel Islands**, which are **Crown dependencies**¹.

The total area of the United Kingdom is over 244,035 square kilometres. The United Kingdom is made of four countries: **England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland**. The capital of the UK is **London**.

The British Isles are separated from the Continent by **the North Sea, the English Channel** and **the Strait of Dover**. The western coast of Great Britain is washed by **the Atlantic Ocean** and **the Irish Sea**.

"England, bound in with the triumphant sea." W.Shakespeare.

"Our England is a garden that is full of stately views, Of borders, beds and shrubberies and lawns and avenues, With statues on the terraces and peacocks strutting by..." R.Kipling

Politically speaking

Great Britain is, strictly, a geographical area consisting of the large island. It's often called **Britain**. The name Great Britain was first used in a political sense after the “Act of Union of Scotland with England and Wales” in 1707. Its official name is **The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland** although it's usually known by a shorter name **the United Kingdom**. In everyday speech this is often shortened to “the UK”. The stickers on cars “GB” are another example of the use of this name. The normal adjective, when talking about something to do with the UK, is “British”.

The United Kingdom was formed in 1801 when the Irish parliament was joined with the parliament for England, Wales and Scotland in London, and the whole of the British Isles became a single state. However, In 1921 Ireland was divided into two parts. In 1922 the larger southern part formed the independent Republic of Ireland and became **the Irish Free State** and in 1949 a completely independent republic, while Northern Ireland became part of the United Kingdom of Great Britain.

The Scottish and Welsh are proud and independent people. In recent years there have been attempts at devolution in the two countries, particularly in Scotland where the Scottish Nationalist Party was very strong for a while. However, in a referendum in 1978 the majority of the Welsh people rejected devolution, and in 1979 the Scots did the same. Nevertheless, most Welsh and Scots sometimes complain that they are dominated by England, and of course they don't like to be referred to as English.

There are older names for parts of the United Kingdom, but these are found mostly in literature. “**Albion**” was the original Roman name for Britain. It may come from the Latin word “*albus*”, meaning “white”. The white chalk cliffs around Dover on the south coast are the first part of England to be seen when crossing the sea from the European mainland.

“**Britannia**” is the name that the Romans gave to their southern British province (which covered, approximately, the area of present-day England). It is also the name given to the female embodiment of Britain, always shown wearing a helmet



and holding a trident (the symbol of power over the sea). In the period of Roman occupation the symbolic figure of Britannia was seated on the globe with spear and round shield. In the reign of Elizabeth I the spear was replaced by Neptune's trident. The figure of Britannia has been on the reverse side of many British coins for more than 300 years.



The White cliffs of Dover² are the tall chalk cliffs on the south-eastern coast of England. When you travel to Britain by sea or air, it is very likely that you will arrive in the Southeast, for this is where the main passenger ports and airports are located.

The Southeast is the most densely populated region of England. It's only 11 per cent of the land area of the country, but a third of the total population lives here. Because of this, a large part of the region is affected by urban development: housing, factories, offices and a complex network of roads and motorways. However, there is still attractive countryside to be found in all counties outside the influence of London. The south coast has a mild and sunny climate which makes it popular with both holiday-makers and the elderly, who find it a comfortable area to retire to.

Forming the Nation

About 2 000 years ago the British Isles were inhabited by **the Celts³**, who had originally come from continental Europe. During the next 1 000 years there were many invasions.

The Romans came from Italy in AD 43. **The Angles** and **the Saxons** came from Germany, Denmark and the Netherlands in the 5th century and gave the country the name England (Angle-land). **The Vikings** kept coming from Denmark and Norway throughout the 9th century. In 1066 (the date in history which every British school child knows) **the Normans** invaded from France.

All these invasions drove the Celts into Wales and Scotland, and of course they also remained in Ireland. The present-day English are the descendants of all the invaders, although they are more Anglo-Saxon than anything else. These various origins explain

many of the differences which exist between England, Wales, Scotland and Ireland – differences in education, religion, legal systems and in language.

The people who live in England are English, the people who live in Scotland are Scots, the people who live in Wales are Welsh. At the same time all these people are British because they live in Britain. As to the word “Great” in the name of the island, it was first introduced by the French to distinguish the island from the area in the north of France called Brittany (the French language has the same word for “Britain” and “Britanny”).

The four nations

People often refer to Britain by another name. They call it “England”. But this is not strictly correct, and it can make some people angry. England is only one of the four nations of the British Isles. Their political unification was a gradual process that took several hundred years.

At one time the four nations were distinct from each other in almost every aspect of life. In the first place, they were different racially. The people in Ireland, Wales and highland Scotland belonged to the Celtic race; those in England and lowland Scotland were mainly of Germanic origin. This difference was reflected in the languages they spoke. People in the Celtic areas spoke Celtic languages: Irish, Gaelic, Scottish Gaelic and Welsh. People in the Germanic areas spoke Germanic dialects (including the one which has developed into modern English). All the invading peoples, particularly the Norman-French, influenced the English language, and we can find many words in English which are French in origin. Nowadays all the Welsh, Scottish and Irish people speak English, but they have their own special accents and dialects, so you can tell what part of Britain a person is from as soon as they begin to speak. Sometimes the differences in accents are so great that people from different parts of the UK have difficulty in understanding one another. The southern accent is generally accepted as Standard English. The nations also tended to have different economic, social and legal systems.

Today these differences have become blurred. But they haven’t completely disappeared. Although there is only one government for the whole of Britain, and people

have the same passport regardless of where in Britain they live, some aspects of government are organized separately in the four parts of the United Kingdom. Moreover, Welsh, Scottish and Irish people feel their identity very strongly.

The dominance of England

There is, perhaps, an excuse for people who use the word “England” when they mean “Britain”. It cannot be denied that the dominant culture of Britain today is specifically English. The system of politics that is used in all four nations today is of English origin. Many aspects of everyday life are organized according to English custom and practice.

Today English domination can be detected in the way in which various aspects of British public life are described. For example, the supply of money in Britain is controlled by the Bank of England. The present queen of the country is universally known as **Elizabeth II** ⁴, even though Scotland and Northern Ireland have never had an **Elizabeth I** ⁵. Newspapers and the television news talk about “Anglo-American relations” to refer to relations between the governments of Britain and the USA.

There has been a long history of migration from Scotland, Wales and Ireland to England. As a result there are millions of people who live in England but who would never describe themselves as English.

Identifying symbols of the four nations

St George



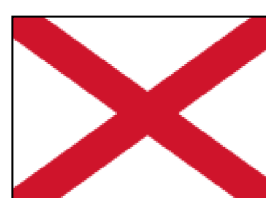
23 April

St Andrew



30 November

St Patrick



17 March

National flag

The flag of the United Kingdom, known as **the Union Jack** or **the Union Flag**, is



made up of three crosses. The upright red cross on a white field is the cross of St George⁶, the patron saint of England. The white diagonal cross on a blue field is the cross of St Andrew⁷, the patron saint of Scotland. The red diagonal cross on a white field

is the cross of St Patrick⁸, the patron saint of Ireland. It was added in 1801, when Ireland became part of the United Kingdom. Wales isn't represented on the Union Jack because it is a principality of England. The national flag of Wales with the red dragon on a green and white background has been recognized since the 1950s as the national flag of Wales.

It has been used as the British flag since 1603, when Scotland and England were united.

The Union Jack is most often seen flying from public buildings or at sports events.



During national celebrations strings of small flags are hung across the street as bunting.

The Union Jack is less important to British people than the Stars and Stripes is to Americans. Many people feel a stronger loyalty to the national flag of England, Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland. The flag of the European Union, a circle of

gold stars on a blue background, is sometimes also seen in Britain.

The Royal Coat-of-Arms

Since 1837 the Royal coat-of-arms has depicted a shield. The four quarters of the shield contain two repetitions of the arms of England, three golden lions on red, the pacing

red lion of Scotland on a gold background and the Irish harp, silver- stringed gold harp on a bright blue field. Wales is not represented on the shield.

The shield is supported by an English lion and the Scottish unicorn, standing on a field with the emblems of England (the rose), Scotland (the thistle) and Ireland (the shamrock). Below this is the royal motto “**Dien et mon droit**” (**God and my right**) – the battle call of Richard the Lionheart⁹ when he led his army in the battle of 1198. The shield is circled with the blue ribbon of the Order of the Garter¹⁰, carrying in gold the motto “**Honi Soit Qui Mal Y Pense**”/Shame on Him Who Thinks Evil of it/ - the words of Edward III¹¹ said in 1348 at the ball.

Topping the crown is a small gold lion, also crowned, and facing outward.

National Anthem

The anthem is based on a 17th century song. The British national anthem was established in 1745, making it the oldest in the world. The anthem originated as a patriotic song in London. Neither the author nor composer is known.



“God save the Queen”

God save our gracious Queen!

Long live our noble Queen!

God save the Queen!

Send her victorious,

Happy and glorious,

Long reign over us,

God save the Queen!

Notes

¹**Crown dependencies.** There are two small parts of the British Isles which have special political arrangements: **the Isle of Man** and **the Channel Islands**. Each has complete internal self-government, including its own Parliament and its own tax system. Both are “ruled” by a Lieutenant Governor appointed by the British government.

²**Dover** – a port in Kent, south-east England, and the nearest English town to France. The part of the Channel between Dover and Calais (called the **Strait of Dover**) is 34 km. wide and is one of the

busiest sea routes in the world. Dover has a long history. It was a town in Roman times, and its castle, which was the administrative centre of the Cinque Ports, was an important part of the country's defences.

³the Celts- This is a group of people whose influence spread to Britain and Ireland from Austria and Switzerland in the late Bronze Age and Iron Age.

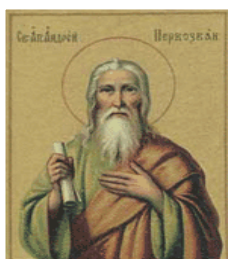


⁴Elizabeth II- is the queen of the United Kingdom since 1952. In 1947 she married Prince Philip of Greece, who had just been made the Duke of Edinburgh. She is a respected and well-loved monarch with a great interest in the Commonwealth.

⁵Elizabeth I- was the queen of England and Ireland from 1558. She is regarded as one of England's greatest rulers.

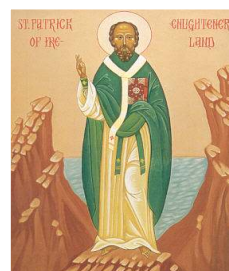
⁶St George – is the national saint of England. Many people believe he was a Christian martyr (a person who is killed because of their religious beliefs) in the third century. According to the legend, he killed a dragon to save a woman. He is often shown in pictures fighting the dragon.

⁷St Andrew – is the patron saint of Scotland. He was one of the 12 apostles, the brother of St Peter. According to tradition, he was killed in Greece on a cross in the shape of an X, and so this cross is on the Scottish flag. Andrew is also the patron saint of Greece and Russia.



⁸St Patrick – is the national saint of Ireland. He was probably born in Wales, the son of a Roman father. Patrick became a monk in Gaul (France) and went to Ireland in 432. He converted many people to Christianity, and there are many stories about his great powers, including one which explains

why there are no snakes in Ireland. Patrick is said to have tricked them all so that they went into the sea and drowned.



⁹Richard the Lionheart or Richard I – was the king of England from 1189 to 1199. He was called Richard the Lionheart because of his courage in battles.

¹⁰Edward III – was the king of England from 1327 to 1377.

¹¹The Order of the Garter is the oldest and highest of the British orders of chivalry. It was probably started in 1348 by King Edward III. According to tradition, it was named after an occasion when a woman in the presence of the king dropped a garter (a band worn around the leg to hold up a sock). The King saved her from embarrassment by picking up the garter and fixing it to his own leg, saying “Honi soit qui mal y pense”. This phrase became the motto of the order.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

geographical area – географическая зона

act of union – закон объединения
political sense – политическое значение
to shorten – укорачивать
sticker – этикетка
a single state – единое государство
independent republic – независимая республика
chalk cliffs – известняковые скалы, обрывы
mainland – материк, континент
southern – южный
female embodiment – женское воплощение
lieutenant governor – губернатор провинции (в английской колонии)
helmet – шлем
to hold a trident – держать трезубец
the symbol of power – символ власти
spear – копье
round shield – круглый щит
reign – правление
the reverse side of coins – обратная сторона монет
densely populated region – густонаселённый регион
to be affected – быть под воздействием
urban development – урбанизация
holiday-maker – отпускник, экскурсант, отдыхающий
elderly – пожилой человек
to retire – уходить на пенсию
invasion, invader – набег, вторжение; захватчик
descendant – потомок
devolution – отделение (от другой страны)
to reject – отказаться
racial – расовый
highland – горная местность; нагорье
lowland – низина; менее гористая часть
to tend – иметь склонность, тенденцию
to become blurred – стали стираться
identity – личность, индивидуальность
dominance – господство, влияние, преобладание
to detect – выявлять, обнаруживать
migration – миграция, передвижение
cross – крест

diagonal – диагональный
principality – княжество
dragon – дракон
strings of flags – ряд, вереница знамён
bunting – материя для флагов, флаги
loyalty – преданность
the Royal coat-of-arms – королевский герб
to depict – изображать, рисовать
repetition – повтор, копия
ricing lion – шагающий лев
silver-stringed harp – арфа с серебряными струнами
unicorn – единорог
thistle – чертополох
shamrock – трилистник
motto – девиз
ribbon – лента
order of the Garter – Орден Подвязки
faced outward – направленный наружу
chivalry – рыцарство
embarrassment – смущение
anthem – гимн
gracious – добрый, милостивый
victorious – победоносный
glorious – славный, великолепный

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: *Europe, British Isles, Great Britain, Ireland, England, Wales, Scotland, Northern Ireland, The United Kingdom, the Isle of Man, the Channel Islands, Anglesea, the Hebrides, the Orkney Islands, the Shetland Islands, Romans, Elizabeth, Neptune, Dover, the Celts, the Saxons, Germany, Denmark, the Netherlands, the Vikings, Norway, the Normans, France, Gaelic, the USA, the Union Jack, St George, St Andrew, St Patrick.*

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a song which has a special importance for a country and is sung on special occasions;*
 - *the female ruler of an independent state that has a royal family;* • *the act of giving power from a central authority to an authority or a government in a local region;*
 - *a design that is a special symbol of a family;*
 - *the movement of large numbers of people, birds or animals from one place to another;*
 - *a high area of rock with a very steep side, often at the edge of the sea or ocean;*
 - *a person that the Christian Church recognizes as being very holy, because of the way they have lived or died;*
 - *an army or a country that enters another country by force in order to take control of it;*
 - *a piece of fabric with a special coloured design on it that may be the symbol of a particular country or organization;*
 - *the main area of land of a country, not including any islands near to it.*
- (devolution, chalk cliffs, mainland, invaders, migration, queen, flag, the patron saint, Coat-of-Arms, anthem).

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. *What exactly is Britain?*
2. *When was the name Great Britain first used? What is its official name?*
3. *Why was the United Kingdom formed in 1801?*
4. *.What happened in Ireland in 1921?*
5. *Were there any attempts at devolution in Scotland and Wales? Why?*
6. *What does Crown dependency mean?*
7. *How was Britain called in ancient times? Why?*
8. *Why are the White cliffs of Dover so popular with tourists and people all over the world?*
9. *When did the nation form on the British Isles? How did it form?*

10. *Why do so many differences exist between England, Wales, Scotland and Ireland?*
11. *Why was Britain called 'Great'?*
12. *Is it correct to call Britain by another name 'England'? Why?*
13. *How were the differences between nations on the British Isles reflected in the languages?*
14. *Have the differences between nations disappeared?*
15. *Can we deny the dominance of England nowadays?*
16. *What national symbols are important for Great Britain? Describe them.*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English

1. *Великобритания представляет собой большой остров, который делится на Англию, Уэльс и Шотландию.*
2. *Альбион – это первоначальное название Англии, данное римлянами; Шотландию они называли Каледония; Уэльс – Кембрия, а Ирландию – Гиберния.*
3. *Английский король Генри VIII объединил Англию и Уэльс в 1536 году.*
4. *В последние годы волна иммигрантов хлынула в Британию. Сегодня 2 миллиона британцев индусы и азиаты по национальности, свыше 50 процентов из них родились в Британии.*
5. *Сегодня в Британии существует расовое напряжение и расовые предрассудки.*
6. *Юго-восток – это самый густонаселённый регион Англии. Здесь живёт третья часть всего населения Англии.*
7. *Население Ирландии, Уэльса и высокогорной части Шотландии принадлежало Кельтской расе.*

Lesson 2

ENGLAND

Stonehenge

Wiltshire

Wiltshire – is a county which consists mainly of agricultural land with the various landscapes, wooded valleys and rounded hills, quiet market towns, each with its unique character and individual importance steeped in historical interest.

Salisbury (New Sarum) – is a town in Wiltshire on the river Avon, built at the meeting-point of four river valleys. It's famous for its cathedral which has the highest spire (pointed tower) in Britain, and for the ancient remains at Old Sarum, the original place where the town was built, to the north of the present town. Buildings of all styles blend harmoniously – from medieval houses, historic inns and market places to modern shopping centre.

Salisbury Plain – is a large area of open land to the north and west of Salisbury in southern England. It's used by the British Army as a training ground, and also contains **Stonehenge** – an ancient circle of stones. It's the most inspiring sights in Britain. Perhaps the most famous, as well as the most mysterious, of all prehistoric monuments. There is nothing else quite like it anywhere in the world..

Two thousand years ago there was an Iron Age Celtic culture throughout the British Isles. It seems that the Celts, who had been arriving from Europe



from the eighth century BC, intermingled with the peoples who were already there. Many

religious sites that had been built long before the arrival of the Celts continued to be used in the Celtic period. Wiltshire has two spectacular examples of the astonishing monumental architecture of this period: **Silbury Hill**, the largest burial mound in Europe, and **Stonehenge**. Such places have a special importance for anyone interested in the cultural and religious practices. Some products of Neolithic enterprise were burial sites such as the **dolmens** of Brittany, where underground burial chambers were crowned by immense stone tables. The standing stones or **menhirs** found in Brittany and the British Isles pose more of a mystery.

Stonehenge was built on Salisbury Plain some time between 3050 and 2300 BC. It's one of the most famous and mysterious archaeological sites in the world. One of its mysteries is how it was ever built at all with the technology of the time (the stones came from over 200 miles away in Wales.)

The stone-circle is made of many upright stones, standing in group of twos, 8.5 metres high. They are joined on the top by other flat stones, each weighing about 7 tons. No one can tell how these large stones were moved. We don't know much about early people who lived in Britain long before a word of their history was written, but the archaeologists can learn something from their skeletons, their weapons and the remains of their dwellings which were found. These people (Iberians) used stone weapons and tools. The art of grinding and polishing stone was known to them, and they could make smooth objects of stone with sharp edges and points.



Stonehenge is still a mystery to scholars. What was it used for? - As a burial place or a sacred place where early man worshipped the sun? There are many theories about the purpose of this great construction. Perhaps it was used as a **temple of Druids** for ceremonies marking the passing of the seasons. They celebrated their religious ceremonies

with the rising of the midsummer sun. The Druids were a Celtic religious group before the Norman Conquest. Some people believe that the Druids were a group of priests who practiced human sacrifice and cannibalism. It might have used as **a kind of astronomical clock**. It has always exerted a fascination on the British imagination, and appears in a number of novels, even in Shakespeare's comedies. One theory is that it was a place from where stars and planets could be observed. It was discovered that the position of some stones was related to the movements of the sun and moon, so that the stones could be used as **a calendar** to predict such things as eclipses.

Another theory is that the great stone circle was used to store terrestrial energy which was then generated across the country through the so-called 'ley lines', which are invisible channels for a special kind of power.

Besides the theories of scientists, there are local legends. One of them tells that Stonehenge was built by the devil in a single night. He flew forwards and backwards between Ireland and Salisbury Plain carrying huge stones one by one and setting them in place. As he worked, he laughed to himself. "That will make people think. They will never know how the stones came here!" But a friar was hiding in a ditch nearby. The devil saw the friar and threw a stone at him which hit the friar on the heel. The stone which the devil threw is known as 'the heel stone', and people will show it to you lying by the side of the road.

Whatever their purpose, the work involved in erecting them represents both a prodigious feat of engineering and a remarkable degree of social cohesion and communal organization.

These days Stonehenge is not only of interest for scholars, but for thousands of tourists. It's now fenced off to protect it from damage.

Lesson 3

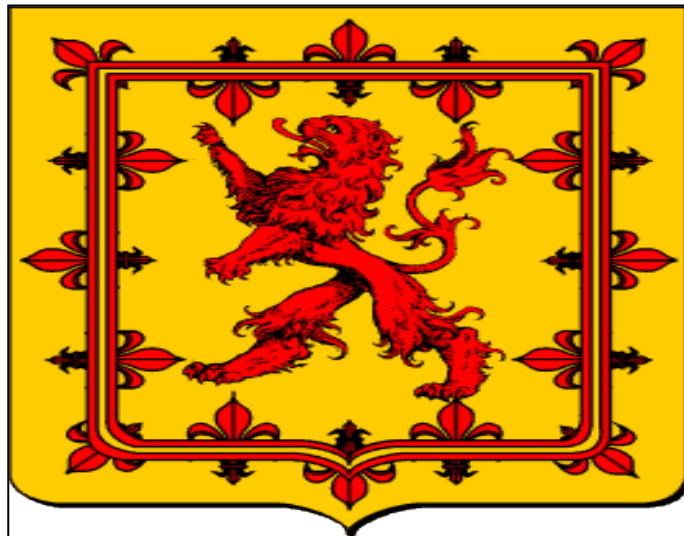
BRIEF OVERVIEW OF SCOTLAND, WALES AND NORTHERN IRELAND

The largest cities

Counties and regions

Cities and towns

SCOTLAND



“We look to Scotland for all our ideas of civilization” - *Voltaire*

The Land

Scotland, one of the four nations of the United Kingdom, is renowned for its history of human achievement and its majestic scenery. Modern Scotland is a diverse and stimulating society with a Parliament reflecting a mature and stable democracy. It has a successful economy based on worldwide trade. But the composition of its trade has changed significantly over the years as the heavy industries – coal, steel and shipbuilding – have been overtaken by newer industries, characterized by invention and innovation.

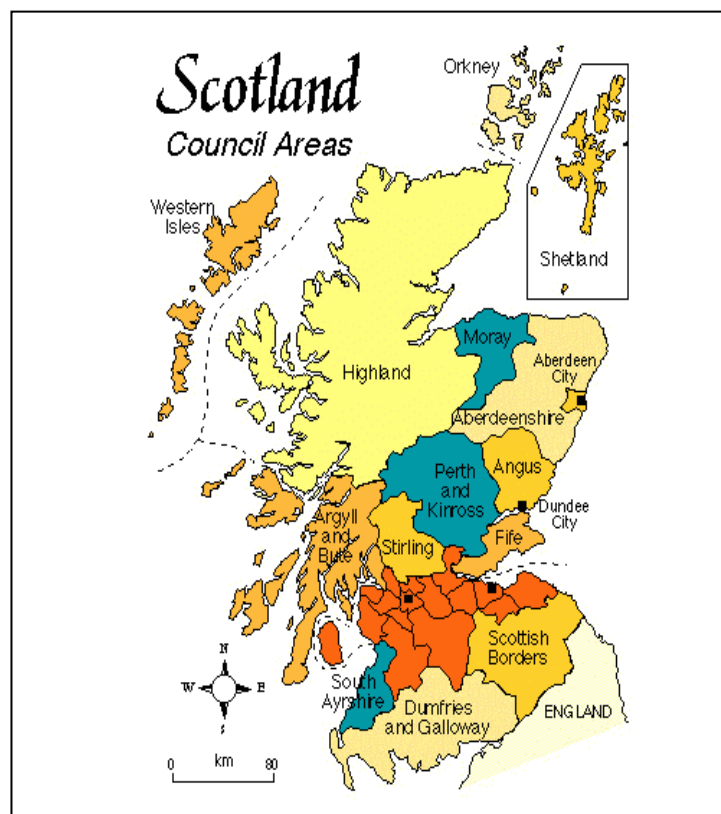
Scotland is a land of scenic beauty: snow-capped mountains, wooded glens and shining lochs (lakes), rivers, rich farmlands and picturesque villages.

This is the land of tartans and fine malt whisky, of romantic castles and the melodies of bagpipes.

Scotland is the most northern of the countries that constitute the United Kingdom. Scotland is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the north and west and by the North Sea in the east. The coastline of Scotland is greatly indented. In many places deep fiords penetrate very far inland. There are many rivers in Scotland, but they are not long. The longest and the most important Scottish river is **the Clyde**.

From 1975 until 1996, Scotland was divided into nine **regions**, which operated in a similar way to ‘counties’. Each region had two levels of local government: an upper level consisting of a single regional council, and a lower level made up of a number of smaller district councils. The regions were replaced in 1996 by a one-level system in which there are 32 **council areas**, each with a single council in charge.

Regions of Scotland



1. *Shetland Islands Area*
2. *Orkney Islands Area*
3. *Western Islands Area*
4. *Highland Region*
5. *Grampian Region*
6. *Tayside Region*
7. *Central Region*
8. *Five Region*
9. *Strathclyde Region*
10. *Lothian Region*
11. *Borders Region*
12. *Dumfries and Galloway Region*

Geographically the territory of Scotland can be divided into three regions: **the Northern Highlands, the Central Lowlands and the Southern Uplands.**

The main facts of the Scottish history

503 – Scots leave Ireland and create kingdom of Dalriada in the west of Scotland.

843 – Kenneth MacAlpin unites Scots and Picts as one nation.

1295 – the Auld Alliance between Scotland and France – one of the world's earliest mutual defence treaties – is signed.

1314 – Scots under Robert the Bruce defeat the English at battle of Bannockburn, leading to Scottish independence.

1320 – the Declaration of Arbroath is drawn up to urge the Pope to recognize Scottish Independence.

1603 – James VI of Scotland becomes James I of England to bring about Union of the Crowns.

1707 – Act of Union – Scotland formally unites with England and Wales to form Great Britain.

1745 – Jacobite rebellion, led by Bonnie Prince Charlie. The Jacobites are defeated the following year at Culloden.

1740-1830 – Period known as the Scottish Enlightenment, which sees a flowering of philosophical, literary, scientific and historical achievement.

1999 – Scottish Parliament established following devolution of powers from Westminster.

Today Scotland is a part of the United Kingdom and is governed from London. There is a special minister in the Government, the Secretary of State for Scotland, who is

responsible for education, local government and other important matters in Scotland. Although the legal, education and banking systems are slightly different from those in England, life is very similar to the rest of the United Kingdom.

All the inhabitants speak English although about 100 000 still speak Scottish Gaelic. Many of the Scottish accents of English are very strong, and visitors from abroad (or even England) sometimes have difficulty in understanding them.

For the traveller, there is an excellent range of leisure opportunities, including some of the world's finest fishing rivers, for example, as well as top-class sports facilities. And it is the country's natural environment that provides the rivers for fishing, the mountains for walking, climbing and skiing, the coast and lochs for water sports of all kinds, and great swathes of unspoilt countryside and wilderness to explore.

Scottish Cities and Towns

Comprising an area of some 30 000 square miles Scotland has a population of just over five million people of whom about one third live in the cities of **Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen and Dundee.**

Edinburgh

The two major cities of the Lowlands are Glasgow and Edinburgh. Edinburgh is the capital city of Scotland and a popular tourist centre. It has long been recognized as the capital, in spite of being second in size to Glasgow. Edinburgh remained the country's political and cultural centre. It is also the centre of government and commercial life. The name Edinburgh means 'Edwin's fort'. It was named after a 7th century king of Northumbria

Several factors have made Edinburgh the outstanding centre of tourism in Scotland. Its picturesque surface features and classical architecture led to its being called "The Athens of the North". Edinburgh is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe, full of historical monuments of great interest.

The dominating feature of the city is **Edinburgh Castle (Castle Rock)**, standing high on a steep rock. It is a volcanic rock with steep cliff walls. The possession of this rock

must have been regarded as a kind of status symbol, and this would explain why the Scottish kings were so attached to it, and why the English repeatedly attempted to gain control of the castle and rock.

Every citizen in Edinburgh checks his watch by the One O’Clock Gun which is fired every day in Edinburgh Castle.

Near the Castle, in the centre of city you can see a long extinct volcano Calton Hill which is called **Arthur’s Seat**.

At the top of the Castle Rock is the oldest building in the city – **Queen Margaret Chapel**. This house of stone – simple, without ornament – was built in 1093. To the south the Castle overlooked rolling plains, to the east the Firth and the North Sea. Westward lay a belt of arable land and on the north the River Forth.

The oldest part of the city lies between the Castle and **the Palace of Holyroodhouse**, built for James IV in an early 16th century. It is the official residence of the present Queen of England Elizabeth II, when she comes on a visit to Scotland.

The Royal Mile is the line of three ancient streets, leading down the hill from Edinburgh Castle to Holyroodhouse.

The finest street in Edinburgh and the main shopping area is **Princes Street**. It was named after the princes who were sons of King George III. On its north side it has shops, hotels, clubs and restaurants and on its south side there are large sloping gardens. There is the monument to **Walter Scott** in these gardens – gothic structure (200 feet spire) built in 1840. Beyond the Scott monument, at the foot of the Castle, is the National Gallery of Scotland, opened in 1859, with many paintings by Scottish masters.

The Scottish National Portrait Gallery shares a building with the National Museum of Antiquities. The Gallery contains Scottish portraits dating from 1500 to the present day. The museum depicts everyday life in Scotland from the Stone Age onwards, together with relics of famous Scots.

The West Princes Street Gardens contain the oldest Floral clock of the world, built in 1903. 25 000 flowers used to built it.

The capital of Scotland is famous for rubber manufacturing and engineering and also for its biscuit industry.

Edinburgh University was founded in 1582, and is famous for its medical faculty.

To the north of Edinburgh is the Firth of Forth. The Forth Bridge, which goes across it, is one of the great engineering achievements of the world.

Edinburgh is also an important centre of cultural life, and each year, in late August and early September, it produces a festival of music and drama which is famous all over the world.

Wales as a World of Mountains, Green Hills and Forests

Geographical regions and cities

Wales is a small country, bounded on the north by the Irish Sea, by the St George's Channel on the west and on the south by the Bristol Channel. Wales is approximately 242 km. from north to south. Its total population is 2.8 million people.

Geographically Wales may be considered part of highland Britain; the Cumbrian Mountains occupy most of the land. It is an area of high mountains, deep valleys, waterfalls and lakes. The climate is rather mild.

As in Scotland, most people in Wales live in one small part of it. In the Welsh case, it is the south-east of the country that is most heavily populated. The south and east have been more industrialized. It is the only part of Britain with a high proportion of industrial villages. Coal mining in south Wales has now almost entirely ceased and, as elsewhere, the transition to other forms of employment has been slow and painful.

Wales is divided into thirteen counties, and in the South there are three industrial counties – **Glamorgan, Monmouth and Carmarthen.**

There are three **National Parks** in Wales which cover approximately one-fifth of the whole country. These parks are protected by law because of their natural beauty, but ordinary people still live and work there. The most famous of the parks is **Snowdonia** in the north-west. The highest mountain range in Wales is in this area, with several peaks. The highest, Snowdon, is 3,560 feet (1085 m.).

You can reach the summit on foot or by the Snowdon mountain railway, which is 7 km. long, and was built in the 19th century. It is very popular with tourists.

Many people travel to the parks each year for special holidays. These include a large number of outdoor activities such as walking, climbing, and riding, or water sports such as canoeing and fishing. People camp and live without all the usual comforts at home.

There are many lakes in the Snowdon country. To the north-west of this area is **the Isle of Anglesey**, which is a remnant of a very ancient land mass. It is joined to the mainland by both road and rail bridges. The first station in Anglesey after crossing the bridge, which is a technical masterpiece, designed by Stephenson, is famous as having the longest name of any place in the world: **LLANFAIRPWLLGWYNGYLLGOGERYCHWYRNDROBWLLANTYSILIOGO GOGUCH**. The local people are proud of this extraordinary name, and can even repeat it to you from memory, but the railway and ordinance survey authorities firmly refuse to recognize more than the first two syllables, and so it is officially known as Lanfair P. G.

Anglesey still remains the corn-growing country.

The only big towns in Wales are along the south coast: **Cardiff, Swansea and Newport**.

Cardiff is the capital city of Wales, in the south-east of the country. It is governed by a unitary authority.

A Roman fort was founded here in the 1st century AD.

The ancient capital of Wales is **Caernarfon**. It is famous for its 13th-century castle. The British monarch's eldest son was traditionally crowned there. In 1969 at a ceremony there Prince Charles became officially 'the Prince of Wales'.

Cardiff has been the official capital of Wales since 1955. There has been a community here for hundreds of years, but it began to grow quickly and to become prosperous during the 19th and early 20th centuries. Cardiff rose to importance with the coal mining and iron industries. Cardiff became a major industrial town and an important port. However, when these industries began to decline, Cardiff suffered too. Today, the docks are much smaller, but the city is now expanding as a commercial and administrative

centre. Financially and industrially, Cardiff is the most important city in Wales. It is an attractive and interesting place to live in, with good communications, plenty of parks and a varied population which includes nearly 10 000 university and college students.

As a tourist, you may want to visit the castle, dating back to Roman times, and Llandaff cathedral, the National Museum of Wales. If you like music, there is the famous national concert hall, St David's Hall, or the New Theatre, which is the home of the Welsh National Opera Company.

Of course, there is a modern shopping centre.

Swansea is an important container port on the south coast of Wales. It was a major centre of the Welsh coal, metal and shipbuilding industries. As these industries became less important towards the end of the 20th century the city was developed as a tourist centre.

Northern Ireland

A Land of Adventure, Warfare and Romance

Geographical regions and cities

Ireland is the second largest of the British Islands lying in the Atlantic off the west coast of Great Britain.

The island of Ireland is politically divided into two parts: Northern Ireland (**Ulster**), which forms part of the United Kingdom of Great Britain, capital **Belfast**, and the Republic of Ireland – a separate state named **Eire** in Irish; its capital is **Dublin**.

The province of Northern Ireland consists of six counties: **Antrim, Down, Armagh, Tyrone, Fermanagh and Londonderry**. The province is surrounded by sea to the north and east, by the Republican counties of Donegal to the west and Cavan to the south.



The population of Northern Ireland is 1.500 million people. Northern Ireland's economy bases partly on agriculture, partly on the heavy industries and tourism.

Antrim

The Antrim coast is a remarkable stretch of country. Its geological composition goes



back 300 million years. There are many delightful holiday resorts there. There are nine glens (valleys) of Antrim. Each of these green valleys has a character of its own. Together they form a lovely and romantic area of rivers, waterfalls, wild flowers and birds.

One of the most interesting places to see in the county of Antrim is **the Giant's Causeway** that is considered to be the eighth wonder of the world. The Causeway is a mass of stone columns standing very near together. The tops of the columns form stepping stones leading from the cliff foot and disappearing under the sea. Over the whole Causeway there are 40 000 of these stone columns. The tallest are about 42 feet (13m) high.

Visitors in modern times have been told that the Causeway is a strange geological feature – the result of volcanic action. The ancient Irish knew differently, however. Clearly, this was giants work and, in particular, the work of the giant Finn McCool, the Ulster soldier and commander of the armies of the King of All Ireland.

Belfast

Belfast is one of the youngest capital cities in the world and it has grown incredibly fast. Belfast is a modern city situated in a district of mountains and rivers, and a chief port of Northern Ireland. Today the city has a population of 400 000, nearly a third of the entire population of Northern Ireland, but in the 17th century it was only a village. Then, during

the 19th century, the development of industries like linen, rope-making, engineering, tobacco and the sea-trade doubled the town's size every ten years. The city is well-known for shipbuilding – it was here that the 'Titanic', was built and sent out on her fatal maiden voyage.

One of the first things that must strike the visitor to Belfast is that Belfast is beautifully situated. Lying in a broad natural amphitheatre, gracefully surrounded by hills, Belfast has rich variety and offers many pleasant surprises. The centre of the city is built like Amsterdam on piles driven into mud, a tight-packed area of industrial and commercial buildings. The mass of the city's buildings are late Victorian or belong to the present century.

In spite of the years of trouble, there are many cultural and leisure facilities. **The Albert Memorial Clock** in High Street is one of those buildings which despite piling have shown signs of subsidence. Built nearly a hundred years ago, this Belfast landmark shows visible evidence of a desire to emulate the leaning tower of Pisa. The hands, by the way, move only each half-minute. The "Albert's" great night is New Year's Eve, when celebrating crowds gather around it.

An Art Gallery is particularly rich in modern Irish painting, a fine collection of Irish silverware, and exhibits which give a vivid picture of Ulster history, geology, and animal life. There is a specialist library which includes early Belfast-printed books, a fascinating collection of photographs which record Ulster life half a century ago, and the Horner collection of spinning wheels.

The Transport Museum, situated in Witham Street, is administered by the Belfast Corporation. It houses one of the finest collections of transport vehicles in Europe.

The Botanic Gardens were originally owned by a private society but have been the property of the public for about seventy years. Its main features are the conservatory, the tropical greenhouses, and the rose walks.

Behind the conservatory are grouped the main buildings of the **Queen's University** of Belfast, so called because it was originally one of three colleges founded by Queen Victoria under an 1845 Act of Parliament.

Among the modern buildings in Belfast, the six-storey **Telephone House** in May Street and the six-storey **Broadcasting House** in Ormeau Avenue are perhaps the most pleasing. The use of silver-grey bricks on a granite base gives character to the functional exchange and a handsome curved front is a feature of the impressive BBC buildings. Not far away from the BBC is the headquarters of **Ulster Television**, the commercial television contractors.

GLOSSARY

I. Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to bound on – *границить*
- valley – *долина*
- heavily populated – *густонаселённый*
- coal mining – *угольная промышленность*
- to cease – *прекратить работу*
- transition – *переход, смена*
- steel – *сталь*
- iron – *железо*
- pit – *яма, шахта*
- voice choir – *хоровой ансамбль*
- scenery – *вид, пейзаж, ландшафт*
- impressive – *впечатляющий, производящий глубокое впечатление*
- summit – *вершина горы*
- remnant – *остаток, след*
- ordinance survey authority – *постановление властей по результатам опроса*
- corn-growing – *выращивание зерна*
- unitary authority – *единая власть*
- prosperous – *процветающий, преуспевающий*
- decline – *приходить в упадок*
- dock – *бассейн для стоянки торговых судов, погрузочная платформа*
- container port – *порт для загрузки и разгрузки судов*
- to defeat – *завоевать*
- invade – *вторгаться, завоевывать*
- Christian missionaries – *проповедник христианства*
- ditch – *канавы, ров, траншея*
- rectangular keep – *прямоугольная цитадель, укрепленная часть крепости*

- vulnerable circular keep* – уязвимая круглая часть крепости
- shire* – английское графство
- to vote* – голосовать
- department* – отдел, управление
- stretch* – пространство, участок, отрезок
- delightful resorts* – восхитительные курортные зоны
- mischievous* – озорной, непослушный
- revenge* – месть
- thorn tree* – колючее дерево
- warfare* – приёмы ведения войны
- monk* – монах
- folk tales* – народные сказания
- raven and swan* – ворон и лебедь
- siege* – осада
- linen* – льняные ткани
- fatal maiden voyage* – роковое первое плавание
- pile* – свая, столб
- leisure facilities* – благоприятные условия для отдыха
- subsidence* - падение
- emulate* – превзойти
- *silverware* – изделия из серебра
- vivid* – яркий, живой
- spinning wheel* – прядильный станок
- vehicle* - транспортное средство
- contractor* – подрядчик, стона в договоре
- stubborn resistance* – упорное сопротивление
- plantation* – колонизация, внедрение, насаждение
- uprising* – бунт, восстание, мятеж
- civilian* – гражданское лицо
- depose* – свергать
- peasant* – крестьянин
- famine* – голод
- miserable* – жалкий, несчастный

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a low area of land between hills or mountains, typically with a river or stream flowing through it;*
 - *a person sent on a religious mission, especially one sent to promote Christianity in a foreign country;*
 - *the county of England that have a lot of countryside and farms;*
 - *a situation in which large numbers of people have little or no food, and many of them die;*
 - *a male member of a royal family, especially the son of the king or queen of a country;*
 - *a large building, typically of the medieval period, fortified against attack with thick walls, battlements, towers, and often a moat;*
 - *a principal administrative division of a country or empire;*
 - *an imaginary or mythical being of human form but superhuman size;*
 - *a raised path or road that crosses water or wet land;*
 - *a serious disagreement or argument, typically a protracted one;*
- (conflict, valley, causeway, missionary, giant, shire, prince, famine, province, castle)***

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. What is the geographical position of Wales?*
- 2. What are the natural features of Wales?*
- 3. How many counties are there in Wales? Characterize them.*
- 4. What are the main features of the west coast, Mid Wales and North Wales?*
- 5. What are the main National Parks in Wales? Are there any interesting places to see?*
- 6. What are the biggest towns and cities in Wales?*
- 7. What did you know about the capital of Wales? Why is this city so important for Wales?*
- 8. What are the main historical periods of Wales? Who conquered it?*
- 9. Why did Edward I and Henry VIII play a great role in the history of Wales?*

10. What are the geographical features of Northern Ireland? How many counties are there in Northern Ireland?
11. Characterize Antrim? What are the main interesting places to see there?
12. Characterize county Down, Armagh, Fermanagh, Londonderry?
13. What is the capital of Northern Ireland? What are the main cultural and leisure facilities?
14. Are there any modern buildings in Belfast?
15. What is the history of Anglo-Irish relations?
16. What English kings and queens played a great role in the history of Northern Ireland?
17. How did the Irish Free State become independent?
18. Why are the religious conflicts considered to be the main problems in Ireland?
19. Why did the Irish Famine happen? What are the results of the famine?

III. Test-translation.

1. После бурной жизни в Лондоне, где он стал опасным для властей. Свифт уехал в Дублин, где начался новый период его жизни. Отныне он посвятил свою деятельность публициста и писателя защите прав и интересов обездоленного ирландского народа.
2. В центре Кардифа возвышается прекрасный замок. Сначала здесь стоял форт, построенный римлянами в 75 г.н.э. Именно римляне дали название этому городу. Кардиф обозначает «крепость у реки».
3. Типичные крестьянские дома в Уэльсе были красного цвета, т.к. по легендам красный цвет отпугивал демонов.
4. Деревенский юг Уэльса – это разнообразие пейзажей: горные вершины, дремучие леса, живописные побережья.
5. Национальный спорт жителей Уэльса, гольф, пользуется огромной популярностью во многих странах. В Уэльсе насчитывается более 200 полей для гольфа.
6. Сноудон (1085 м. над уровнем моря) – это самый высокий горный хребет Уэльса.
7. Уэльс славится страной крепостей, которые строили английские короли. Край красного дракона на протяжении многих столетий не хотел подчиняться Англии. Договор о присоединении к более сильному соседу был подписан лишь в 16 веке после долгих лет восстаний.
8. В одном из городов Уэльса находится самый маленький дом в Великобритании (3 м. в длину, 2 м. в ширину и 2.5 м. в высоту). Таким жилищем обзавёлся один рыбак в начале 19 века.

Lesson 4

LONDON

The City, Westminster

The Old City of London and the communities surrounding it form one political unit. This area is called **Greater London** or simply **London**.

London covers 1,580 square kilometers. The river Thames flows through the heart of London. The Thames empties into the North Sea. The river thus links London with shipping routes throughout the world.

London is divided into 32 **boroughs**. Each borough has their own governments. It is difficult to speak about the centre of London as of one definite place. The gradual growth of the city helps to explain the fact that London doesn't have just one centre, it has a number of centres, each with a distinct character: the financial and business centre called **the City**, the shopping and entertainment centre in **the West End**, the government in **Westminster**, and **the East End**, the industrial part of London. Some places on the outskirts of London have kept their village-like character.



The City

It is the City that we must look for the origins of London we know today. Over the centuries the City was jealously guarded its independence. It is an area best seen on foot, because of the main canyons between the buildings, narrower streets lead to smaller alleys, hidden taverns and churchyards.

The City, colloquially called "**The Square Mile**", is the oldest and the most historic part of London. The City is the heart of London. Today the City is one of the world's great financial centers, its commercial and business part. The area of the City is about a square

mile. Only five thousand people live in the City, but half a million office workers crowd its buildings each working day. The City of London is a miniature city within a world-class capital.

It's an area with a long and exciting history. The City doesn't refer to the whole of central London but rather to a small area east of the centre, which includes the site of the original Roman town. The City on week-days is the busiest place in London with its numerous banks, offices, insurance companies and different firms. The City is one of the major banking centers of the world and one can find the banks of many nations here. Here you can find **the Bank of England, the Stock Exchange and Lloyd's** - the most famous insurance company in the world. Lloyd's, typical of so many City institutions, was founded in a coffee shop at the end of the 17th century. Originally concerned exclusively with maritime insurance, today its syndicates of some 5 000 members underwrite an astonishing range of world-wide risks. In the centre of the Underwriting Room hangs the 'Lutine Bell' which is rung to mark an important announcement – one stroke means bad news and two – good news. The bell came from the frigate 'La Lutine' which sank in 1799 with a cargo of gold which was insured by Lloyd's.

The Bank of England is called "old lady of Threadneedle Street". It was founded in 1694 largely to finance the French wars during the reign of **William and Mary**¹.

Notes

¹**William and Mary** – William of Orange was the king of Great Britain and Ireland from 1688 to 1702. He was a Dutch prince, married to Marry, the daughter of James II.. They were invited by British Protestants to be the king and queen of Britain in order to prevent the Roman Catholic James II from being king.

The name 'Threadneedle Street' came from the large thread needle factory which was situated here from 1620. Here is a stretch of the Old Roman Wall with its bastions and fort. Within the vaults of the "Old Lady of Threadneedle Street" are kept the nation's gold reserves. The Bank was an independent company up to 1946 when it was nationalized and control passed to the Treasury.

The Royal Exchange of 1844 is the third on its site – the first was founded in 1565 by the great financier, Sir Thomas Gresham, for 'merchants to assemble in', but this

building was destroyed in the Great Fire of London and its successor suffered a similar fate in 1838. No business has been conducted from it since 1939.

The Central Criminal Court, more popularly known as **The Old Bailey** was built in 1907 near the site which was London's main prison from the thirteenth century. It's called the Old Bailey, after the street in which it is situated. Contrary to popular belief the figure of Justice, topping the copper dome, holding a sword in one hand and the scales of justice in the other, is not blind-folded. Some of Britain's most famous murder trials have taken place here. Nearby is the area known as **the Temple** – a group of buildings where many lawyers have their offices.

Fleet Street is famous as the home of the nation's newspapers. Coffee houses on Fleet Street were a chief source of news, the meeting place for newspaper men since the 18th century, when writers met to talk and so London's newspaper industry grew up in this area. In fact, only two of the nation's newspapers – **the Daily Express** and **the Daily Telegraph** – are still in Fleet Street. **The Times**, **the Guardian** and many others are nearby.

Publishing houses of many big foreign newspapers are also there. Fleet Street is busy day and night. It is packed with vans, cars, motorcycles, newsboys every day between 9 a.m. and 3 p.m. when the latest news is ready to go out all over the world.

The City on week-days is the busiest place in London, but it is much quieter in the City at the weekend, as nobody lives there, but there are always a lot of people in **St Paul's Cathedral** which is one of the most beautiful buildings in the world. The Cathedral is the masterpiece of the famous British architect Sir Christopher Wren whose tomb can be seen in the crypt of the Cathedral.

One of the oldest, best-known and most impressive places of interest in the City is **The Tower of London** which stands on the north bank of the Thames. It was begun in the 11th century by William the Conqueror and was added to and altered by later monarchs. In its long history the Tower has served as fortress, Royal Palace and prison.

Now it is a unique museum in which you can feel past centuries and touch the walls that witnessed the executions of Henry VIII's two wives and Guy Fawkes, Sir Thomas

More, the famous philosopher, Sir Walter Raleigh, navigator explorer and historian and so on. Many 'privileged' people were beheaded in the Tower. Perhaps the blackest of the many crimes committed in the Tower in those troubled time was the murder by the tyrannical Richard III of the two boy princes.

You can take a picture with the Yeomen Warders, known as "Beefeaters" who still guard the Tower. They wear a state dress uniform dating from Tudor times. It consists of funny flat hats, trousers bound at the knee, and the Royal monogram on their breast. These traditional medieval clothes make the old castle look still more fantastic and theatrical. Nowadays these Yeomen-Warders act as guides taking tourists around the Tower and telling them numerous histories and legends associated with place. Usually they are veterans of the Second World War. You will often see war medals on their traditional uniforms.

Now the Tower is a museum. You can see there a great collection of weapons of different times, tools of torture, knights' armour you can try on, numerous Royal regalia. Tourists are usually attracted by the famous and priceless Crown-Jewels. You can watch the king's crown. A number of ravens have their home at the Tower, and they are officially 'on the strength of the garrison'. There is a superstition that when the ravens fly away from the Tower it will be the sign of the downfall of the British Empire. Because of this superstition the wings of the ravens are regularly clipped.

The Ceremony of the Keys

The Ceremony of the Keys dates back 700 years and has taken place every night since that time. It was never interrupted even during the air-raids by the German in the Second World War. On one particular night, April 16, 1941, bomb blast disrupted the ceremony, knocking out members of the Escort and Yeomen Warders. Despite this, the duty was completed.

Every night at 9.53 p.m. **the Chief Warder of the Yeomen Warders (Beefeaters)** of the Tower of London lights a candle lantern and goes, accompanied by his **Escort** towards the **Bloody Tower**. In his hand the Chief Warder carries the keys, with which he

locks **the West Gate** and then **the Middle Tower**. Then the Chief Warder and his Escort return to the Bloody Tower, where they are stopped by the sentry. Then comes the following dialogue:

Sentry: 'Halt! Who goes there?'

Chief Warder: 'The keys!'

Sentry: 'Whose keys?'

Chief Warder: 'Queen Elizabeth's keys' Sentry: 'Advance, Queen Elizabeth's keys; all's well'. Having received permission to go on, the Chief Warder and his Escort walk through the Archway of the Bloody Tower and face the Main Guard of the Tower, who gives the order to present arms, which means to hold a weapon upright in front of the body as a ceremonial greeting to an officer of high rank. The Chief Warder takes off his Tudor-style cap and cries, 'God preserve Queen Elizabeth!' 'Amen!' answers the Main Guard and the Escort. Only a limited number of visitors are admitted to the ceremony each night



Westminster

The City of Westminster is the wealthiest of any borough in the kingdom. It includes some of the most desirable residential properties, enormously valuable.

Westminster is one thousand years younger than the City. Old Westminster is London at its grandest: the place where kings and queens are crowned, where they lived and often were buried. It's the forge of national destiny, the place where the heart of the Empire beat, the Mecca of politicians throughout the ages. The past here is cast in stone and you take it all in many important buildings: **Westminster Palace, Westminster Abbey, Buckingham** and **St James's Palaces**.

Westminster Palace, famous as **the Houses of Parliament**, is situated on the left bank of the Thames. It is the seat of the British Parliament. It's here that the most

important decisions for the country's policy are taken. Besides, it's a wonderful work of art with hundreds of paintings and sculptures worth seeing. Its **Clock Tower** with the hour-bell called 'Big Ben' is known all over the world. The bell rings every hour and its sound is familiar to millions of people. There are many offices in **Whitehall** ¹ and **Downing Street**.

Notes

¹**Whitehall** – is a street in central London, between Trafalgar Square and the Houses of Parliament. Whitehall is often used to refer to the government

Downing Street is a short street which contains the official London home of the British Prime Minister at Number 10. In fact, the words 'Downing Street' and 'Number 10' are often used to mean the Prime Minister's office or the British government. The street was built in about 1680 by an MP, George Downing. Next door, at number 11, lives the Chancellor of the Exchequer who is responsible for financial planning and the British economy. Just around the corner, in Whitehall itself, are all the important ministries: **the Foreign Office, the Ministry of Defence, the Home Office and the Treasury**.

In the middle of Whitehall is the **Cenotaph**, a monument to the fallen in the two world wars of the 20th century. According to tradition, on Remembrance Day the Queen lays a wreath of poppies at the Cenotaph.

There are two Royal Palaces here: **Buckingham Palace** and **St James's Palace**.



The first famous sight you can see in this part of London is **Buckingham Palace**, the official London residence of the sovereign since 1837, the reign of Queen Victoria. Though the building itself isn't an architectural masterpiece, its interior decoration, paintings and furniture are really worth seeing. Many tourists stand outside the Palace to watch the ceremony of 'Changing the Guard' which attracts with its music and soldiers' traditional uniforms. Since 1993 parts of the Palace have been opened to the public in the summer.

St James's Palace is a large grand house built by King Henry VIII in 1552. It was the main London home of the king or queen from 1697 to 1837. There is an imposing entrance to the Palace, which now houses offices of the Prince and Princess of Wales. Heads of State and diplomats are received in the State rooms.

Several monarchs were born in the Palace, including Charles II, who commissioned Sir Christopher Wren to add some fine State Apartments overlooking the park.

Other well-known places there include **St James's Park, the Mall¹** and **Victoria Station.**

Notes

¹The Mall – is a straight road in central London, leading from Buckingham Palace to Trafalgar Square. It was first laid out in the 17th century and is used for Royal processions.

Westminster Abbey is another leading landmark of London. Its ancient walls house the church where almost all British monarchs have been crowned, married and buried since the 11th century. It was the burial place of all English kings and queens until George III.

Today it is still a church dedicated to regular worship and to the celebration of great events in the life of the nation. Neither a Cathedral nor a church, Westminster Abbey is a 'Royal Peculiar', subject only to the Sovereign.

Westminster Abbey receives no financial assistance from the state. Its every day work depends upon voluntary donations and the fees charged to visitors.

London's Colourful Pageantry and Ceremonies

"London is a nation, not a city." – Benjamin Disraeli

Many traditional ceremonies have been preserved since old times and are still regularly observed. Such ceremonies in London attract many tourists. The London calendar is distinguished by many picturesque events and ceremonies, some of ancient origin. The most popular are the daily ceremonies.

Changing the Guard

The Changing of the Guard is the most popular of London's daily ceremonies. It takes place at Buckingham Palace and St James's Palace every day at 11.30 when one set of soldiers guarding a royal building replaces another on duty. Then the symbolic ceremony of handing over the palace keys takes place between the two captains. The ceremony always attracts a lot of spectators because of special troops who wear colourful uniforms: scarlet tunics, blue trousers and bearskin caps. The ceremony is attended by one of the Regimental bands.

The history of the Foot Guards goes back to 1656, when King Charles II, during his exile in Holland, recruited a small body-guard. Later this small body-guard grew into a regiment of guards.

Trooping the Colour

No ceremony is more popular than the ancient and mysterious ceremony of 'Trooping the Colour'. This splendid and colourful event in honour of the Sovereign's official birthday is held on the first or second Saturday in June. The route from Buckingham Palace to Horse Guards Parade, behind Whitehall, is decorated with banners and flags and lined with thousands of spectators, eagerly waiting to see the Queen heading the procession, dressed in uniform and riding side-saddle on one of her favourite horses.



The ceremony can be divided into the following phases: the arrival of the Queen at the Horse Guide Parade, her inspection of the troops, the actual Trooping, the march past, and the Queen's return to Buckingham Palace.

The ceremony begins with the trumpeters sounding the call. The new guard arrives and the old guard is relieved. The two officers, also on horseback, salute each other and then stand side by side while the guard is changed.

The ceremony derives from old military ceremonies. From earliest times Colours and Standards have been used to indicate the position of the commander in battle and act as rallying point for the soldiers, and were honoured as symbols of the spirit of military units. It was probably in the 18th century that it became customary in the British Army, before a battle, to salute the Colours by beat of drum before carrying them along the ranks (this is what the expression 'Trooping' means) so that every soldier could see them and be able to recognize them later.

Royal Salutes

Royal Salutes are fired on special occasions such as the Queen's official birthday, royal births, State Opening of Parliament, and to honour visiting royalty and heads of state. The King's Troop, Royal Horse Artillery, has the privilege of firing salutes in Hyde Park when 41 guns are fired. At the Tower of London the Honourable Artillery Company, the oldest British regiment, fires 62 guns.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to empty into – впадать в
- double-decker bus – двухэтажный автобус
- pier – пирс
- hustle and bustle – толкотня и суматоха
- borough – небольшой город, имеющий самоуправление; округ, район
- outskirts – окраина
- tavern – таверна, закусочная
- maritime – морской
- to underwrite – подписывать, подтверждать
- range – сфера, зона
- announcement – объявление, сообщение
- largely – в значительной степени

- thread* – нить
- needle* – иголка
- vault* – подвал
- equestrian* – всадник, наездник
- Guildhall* – ратуша; место собрания гильдии
- Court of Common Council* – Судебный Общественный Совет
- pomp and pageantry* – пышность и великолепие
- Corporation of London* – городские власти
- to see to* – заботиться, присматривать за
- to run* – руководить, управлять
- mansion house* – большой особняк, дворец
- Old Bailey* – Центральный уголовный суд
- copper dome* – медный купол
- scale of justice* – весы правосудия
- to alter* – менять, переделывать
- navigator* – мореплаватель
- Yeoman Warder* – английский дворцовый страж
- armour* – доспехи
- raven* – ворон
- flute* – флейта
- flaming urn* – пылающая урна
- circulation of blood* – кровообращение
- at its grandest* – во всём своём великолепии
- forge* – кузница
- Chancellor of Exchequer* – Министр Финансов
- the Foreign Office* – Министерство Иностранных дел
- the Ministry of Defence* – Министерство Обороны
- the Home Office* – Министерство Внутренних дел
- the Treasury* – Государственное казначейство
- Cenotaph* – памятник, воздвигнутый в честь погибших во время первой мировой войны
- wreath of poppies* – венок с маками
- imposing* – производящий впечатление
- Royal Peculiar* – особая королевская церковь, храм, независимый от епископа и подчинённый монарху
- hospitality* – гостеприимство
- voluntary donation* – добровольное денежное пожертвование
- fee* – гонорар
- to charge* – взимать у кого-либо что-либо

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Charing Cross, the Stock Exchange, Lloyds, Guildhall, the Guardian, St Paul's Cathedral, Christopher Wren, Walter Raleigh, Yeoman, Beefeater, St Bartholomew, the Barbican, Buckingham Palace, the Mall.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a monument built in memory of soldiers killed in war who are buried somewhere else;
 - the British government department that deals with relations with other countries;
 - the place for business of preparing and printing books, magazines, CD-ROMs, etc. and selling or making them available to the public;
 - a large bird of the crow family, with shiny black feathers and a harsh cry; - raven
 - a town or a part of a city that has its own local government;
 - the organization of the people and systems that are used by a government to protect a country from attack;
 - a wild or garden plant, with a large delicate flower that is usually red;
 - the government minister who is responsible for financial affairs;
 - the government department that controls public money;
 - the British government department that deals with the law, the police and prisons, and with decisions about who can enter the country;
- (equestrian, raven, Chancellor of Exchequer, the Foreign Office, the Ministry of Defence, the Home Office, the Treasury, Cenotaph, poppy, borough, publishing house)*

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. How many boroughs are there in London?
2. How many centres are there in London?
3. Why is the City of London called a miniature city within a world-class capital?
4. When was the Bank of England founded? What was it built for?
5. What important buildings were built in the City?
6. Why is Fleet street so famous in the City and in the world?
7. What can you visit in the City at the weekend? Why are these places so interesting for tourists?
8. What is the difference between the City and the City of Westminster?
9. What historical places can you see there?

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English, using the words and phrases from the texts.

1. Сити управляется Корпорацией в Лондоне – уникальной неполитической местной властью. Четыре моста, включая Лондонский и Тауэр, соединяет Сити с другими районами большого города.

2. В Лондонском Сити располагается 550 иностранных банков.

3. Ночью в Сити остаётся всего лишь несколько тысяч человек – сторожа, уборщики и рабочие типографий.

4. Один из своеобразных уголков Лондона – Темпл, юридический квартал города, владения корпораций английских адвокатов начиная с 14 века.

5. Молл – самая широкая и самая прямая улица центральной части Лондона, ведущая к Букингемскому дворцу – современной королевской резиденции.

6. Собор Святого Павла – это протестантский храм, который был задуман и построен как противопоставление католическому храму Св. Петра в Риме.

7. Для англичан Вестминстерское Аббатство – это святыни нации, символ всего, за что боролись и борются британцы.

8. Быть похороненным в Вестминстерском Аббатстве было для высокопоставленных аристократов прошлых веков делом чести.

9. Названия башен Тауэра напоминает о далёком прошлом, о связанных с ним мрачных событиях: «Кровавая башня», «Колокольная», «Соляная», «Колодезная» и т.д. По преданию в «Кровавой» башне убили наследных принцев, детей Эдуарда IV.

10. При Генрихе I в Тауэре был устроен зверинец, остававшийся там до 1830 года, когда герцог Веллингтон перевёл зверинец в Зоологический сад. Начало зверинцу положил император Германии Фридрих, приславший королю Генриху I трёх леопардов, символизовавших герб английского короля. Генриху III подарили белого медведя и слона, содержание которых было возложено на горожан.

11. В 2010 году в Лондонском Сити была построена гигантская башня ('Bishopsgate Tower', 288 м.) – 63-х этажный колосс, который является самым высоким небоскрёбом в Лондоне и Британии.

12. По своему деловому значению Сити – это подлинное сердце Лондона и «контора всей Англии», недаром его герб служит и гербом английской столицы.

LONDON

The West End



Streets and Squares

The West End is the name given to the area of central London north from **the Mall** to **Oxford Street**. The West End contains the city's most famous streets for shopping, theatres and cinemas, as well as many restaurants and other forms of entertainment. It includes such places as **Soho Square, Oxford Street, Shaftesbury Avenue, Chinatown, Leicester Square, Regent Street and Piccadilly Circus**. The name West End is associated with glamour and bright lights.

Much of West End is laid out around squares. From Buckingham Palace it is a short walk to **Trafalgar Square** which may be called the main square and the geographical centre of London. It is not as old as some other places of the capital as it was designed in the middle of the 19th century to commemorate the victory of the British fleet headed by **Admiral Nelson** over Napoleon's fleet at **Cape Trafalgar** in 1805 in the mouth of the Straits of Gibraltar and lasted several hours. Nelson was fatally wounded by a shot which broke his backbone. He died on board his flagship "**the Victory**", but not before being told



that he had won the battle. Nelson lost his life in that battle but brought victory to his country so British people think of him as their national hero.

Nelson's column, made of granite, in the centre of the square is very tall with a statue of the Admiral on the top. This most impressive monument is 185 feet (about 52 m.) tall. The statue of Nelson itself, placed facing towards the sea he loved, measures 17 feet (more than 5 m.) in height. The four panels on the pedestal show the Battle of St. Vincent, the Battle of the Nile, the Bombardment of Copenhagen and the death of Nelson. They were made of the guns captured at these battles and at Trafalgar.

The fountains were completed in 1845. There are four bronze lions round the base of the column symbolizing the power of the British Empire. They were included in the original designs but were not placed in position until 1867. They were cast from the cannon of battleships.

Other attractions on the square are **the National Gallery** with a wonderful collection of arts and the **National Portrait Gallery**.

Quite often the square becomes the location for meetings and in it crowds of Londoners congregate to celebrate political rallies. There are many pigeons in the square and Londoners like to feed them. Everybody knows that the dove is the symbol of peace all over the world. Very large numbers of people gather there every year to celebrate New Year. In December a huge Christmas Tree from Norway stands in Trafalgar Square. Norway sends the Christmas Tree as thanks for wartime help. Ambassador of Norway switches on the lights. Carols are sung and people hear chimes of Big Ben.

Around the Square there are many statues. One shows **George IV** (1762-1830) on horseback, he is riding in Roman costume and without stirrups. He chose the pose himself and made it very heroic. The Crown lost power and prestige because of his extravagant dissipation.

A statue of **Charles I** (1600 – 1649) on horseback looks down Whitehall. During the Civil War (1642-1652) it was sold to a brazier to melt down. But he hid it in the garden and produced it again when the monarchy returned.

In a corner of the Square there is an observation post for one policeman. It is the **smallest police station** in London. The lamp on top of the post is said to be from Nelson's flagship "Victory".

Piccadilly Circus – a Shopper's Paradise

Piccadilly Circus is the heart of the West End. It is one of the busiest places in London, where famous busy streets come together, including **Piccadilly, Regent Street, Bond Street, Oxford Street** and **Shaftesbury Avenue**. It is surrounded by many distinguished 19th and 20th century buildings and it forms the centre of London's largest entertainment area. Red buses, taxis and brightly coloured advertisements are all familiar sights around busy Piccadilly Circus. There is also a large underground station here.

The origin of the name of the street is in the story about a man who is now forgotten. The man was a tailor who grew rich by making high collars called "piccadillies". He built a grand house which he called Piccadilly Hall, and the name, slightly changed, has lived on.

The focal point of this street is cast aluminum **Angel of Christian Charity** (1893), popularly called '**Eros**'. Originally the winged statue was erected as a symbol of charity which had become a much-loved symbol of London. It was made of by Alfred Gilbert to commemorate the philanthropist and statesman **Antony Ashley Cooper**, 7th earl of Shaftesbury (1801–1885), champion fighter for better conditions for the insane, factory workers, chimney sweeps and colliery workers and for better housing for the poor.

Now it has become one of the most popular meeting places, probably second only to Trafalgar Square, for young people and punks who make money letting tourists take their pictures. Piccadilly Circus is the centre of night life in the West End. It's actually quite small, and most people are rather disappointed when they see it for the first time because they had imagined it would be much bigger. Piccadilly Circus is a dynamic and picturesque place with a happy and lively cosmopolitan atmosphere. Here you can see people from the most countries in the world, of all races, dressed in their national clothes.

From Piccadilly Circus you can stroll along the richest streets of London – **Regent, Oxford and Bond Streets** lined with expensive shops, restaurants and hotels. Serious

shopping or just browsing are equally rewarding experiences in London whose range of shops, stores and stalls cater for all tastes – and purses.

Regent Street was designed in 1813 – 1823 by John Nash and named after the Prince Regent (the title of King George IV who ruled Britain from 1811 to 1820 while his father, King George III, was mentally ill. Regent Street and Regent Park in London are named after him, and the period 1811 – 1820 is known as the Regency.



This street contains several famous shops where you can buy expensive jewellery and restaurants. **Oxford Street** is a popular shopping street in the West End of London. In Oxford Street, the shops and

department stores sell everything from clothes to pots and pans, and prices are moderate.

Knightsbridge is an even more exclusive and expensive shopping area. Its most famous department store is **Harrods**. It is large, fashionable and expensive. It claims to be able to supply any article and provide any service. It began in 1861 as a small shop selling food, owned by Henry Harrod, and has been owned since 1985 by Mohamed Al-Fayed.

Shopping in the exclusive Harrods store is not necessarily expensive and its ability to supply every possible demand has made it legendary.

The auction rooms of Sotheby's, Christie's and others offer excitement and interest in these streets.

Soho and Bloomsbury

Soho is a district in the West End of London between Oxford Street, Piccadilly Circus and Leicester Square. Soho is an area which has had a cosmopolitan flavour since French Protestant refugees first settled here in the 1680's. After this first wave great numbers of French came to London during the French revolution of 1793, among them many artistic people. These two groups formed the foundation of the Soho population. Theatres were opened. The actors and the musicians liked this "foreign place".

The name of this area probably comes from the old hunting cry of “Tally-Ho” or “So-Ho” when Soho fields were used for hunting. It’s a very old call to scare the foxes from their cover in the 13th century. But its first use as a place - name was found in 1636.

Soho Square is an area of considerable interest and a welcome relief from crowded Soho’s streets. On the east side of the square is the Roman Catholic Church of St. Patrick, built in 1893. The Post Office Tower was completed in 1964. This 619-ft – high needle of concrete and glass is one of the tallest buildings in London. It has a revolving restaurant and a viewing platform, which are reached by high-speed lift.

Northeast of Soho is **Bloomsbury**. The Earl of Southampton built Bloomsbury Square in 1660. The whole atmosphere of Bloomsbury was for a long time enhanced by the presence of teachers and scholars, painters, actors and writers. Bloomsbury gave its name to a group of artists and intellectuals who met at private homes during the period 1907 – 1930 (“Bloomsbury Group”). In the area are the University of London and its University College, the Royal Academy of Dramatic Art.

THE EAST END

London is a city of great contrast. Its western part is the richest. The poorest part of London is the East End.

The East End is an area to the east of the City of London, from the Tower of London along the north bank of the river Thames.

The East End of London used to be the poorest district of the City. Among the overcrowded houses there was no drainage, and, despite the early foundation of hospitals and charities, the average age of death in 1840 was 16 years, 50% of all deaths among the labouring classes being children under 5. This was the life of **Jack the Ripper**¹, where life and gin were equally cheap.

The East End was the most savagely bombed in World War II. After the rebuilding many families accepted new homes and jobs in the New Towns started at this period.

But now it’s a developed area with new houses and a modern industrial centre. It covers a wide area. A part like **Bethnal Green**, which was once a country village, is quite

different from the areas down by the river, where there are many wharfs and warehouses. In 1987 a light rapid transit railway was built that linked **the docklands**² and the City.

Greenwich is a district of south-east London with many attractive old buildings and parks. Set in the beautiful surroundings of Greenwich Park are **The National Maritime Museum, Queen's House** and **Old Royal Observatory** which was built there in the 17th century. Close by is the bustling riverside town of Greenwich with its historic buildings, street markets, specialist shops, plentiful pubs and restaurants.

The National Maritime Museum in Greenwich shows British sailing history. There is a gallery devoted to Britain's greatest Admiral and national hero, **Lord Nelson**. He saved Britain from Napoleonic invasion and was shot at his greatest victory, Trafalgar, by a French sniper. The Museum explains how and why Britain became a leading maritime power and tells the story of important figures in history such as Captain James Cook who helped to extend the nation's boundaries.

Here you can see '**The Cutty Sark**' and '**Gypsy Moth**'³. 'The Cutty Sark' is a famous British sailing ship, built in 1869, which carried tea from China and then, after 1879, wool from Australia. After 1922 she became a training ship for British sailors. Since 1957 she has been open to visitors. Her name comes from 'cutty sark' (short shirt) worn by one of the heroes in Robert Burns's poem.

Notes

¹**Jack the Ripper** – is the name given to an unknown man who murdered and cut up several prostitutes in 1888. The name was used in a letter by someone who claimed to be the killer but may have been a journalist. People have tried ever since to find out who he was, but without success.

²**Docklands** – is an area of the houses and offices in the East End where London's commercial docks used to be. The old docks were too shallow for large modern ships, so the London Docklands Urban Development Corporation was set up by the government in 1979 to develop it. The project had many problems, but the area now has a new life and includes one of Europe's tallest buildings, the Canary Wharf tower. **Docklands Light Railway** – is a system of light trains used for public transport in the London Docklands which started operating in 1987. Many of its stations are linked to the London Underground.

³**'Gypsy Moth'** – название яхт известного английского путешественника Френсиса Чичестера. В 1966-1967 гг. он в одиночку совершил плавание вокруг света.

In '**All Hands Gallery**' please **do** touch! Experience what life in the ocean waves is really like. Try your hand at working a crane, docking a ship, and sealing a leak. Send messages by flag.

The Museum also runs **the Old Royal Observatory**, the home of **Greenwich Mean Time – GMT¹**. The Observatory was built in 1676 by Charles II.



There are regular public shows in the Observatory Planetarium.

The Queen's House was built in 1638 for Charles I's wife. It is the earliest English building in the classical style. It set the pattern for the whole historic landscape seen at Greenwich today.

The Millennium Dome was built in Greenwich as the main centre for Britain's celebrations for the year 2000. It is London's newest attraction. Inside the Dome tourists will find '**Skyscape**', a huge big screen cinema hall which can also be used for concerts and shows. You can visit the new world of '**Learning**' in a magical orchard and see the 21st Century Doomsday Book. You can experience the excitement of '**Work**' in the future and see how much it has changed from the past. In the section '**Body**' the visitors can have a journey of emotions through the human body and explore the opportunities and challenges that advances in science, genetics and medicine will bring.

Notes

¹**GMT** – means the time of day on the line of 0° longitude, i.e. a straight line between the North Pole and the South Pole which goes through Greenwich. It is the official time in Britain from October to March. Different time zones in other parts of the world are usually described with reference to GMT.

'The Shared Ground' will give a chance to observe British interior scenes and experience what could be done if people really joined together. **'Living Island'** will provide a trip to a typical British sea resort with a beach, bandstand, pier and lighthouse and games with hidden messages. **'Home Planet'** will take the tourists to the most amazing journey to the most incredible planet in the known universe – Earth – to find out what makes our planet unique.

‘Self Portrait’ will show thousands of faces of the nation in the picture gallery and photo exhibition. **‘Faith’** will help to get acquainted with the huge range of beliefs and religions which are part of the UK today. **‘Mind’** will give you a chance to play mind games with robots and to explore your senses and perceptions working out how to create better future. **‘Rest’** will provide the visitors with a mental flotation tank where they can escape the hectic pace of the modern life and enjoy empty space packed with sound, light and shapes. **‘Money’** will give you a virtual chance to blow a million pounds in a wild spending spree and find out what the City really does with the money.

The East End is also one of those areas of London where people from abroad have come to find work. For centuries foreigners have made London their home. Some have had to leave their country for religious or political reasons. Others have wanted to find a better life. Some brought new skills and started new industries. These days many Jews and Bengalis live in the East End, and within a small area you can see a mosque, a church and a synagogue.

In Britain today there are about two million coloured citizens. They are mainly immigrants from Britain’s former colonies. Immigrants started to enter Britain after 1950. In Britain they took the jobs which the native population didn’t want.

The East End is especially famous as the centre of the clothing industry in London. The East End markets are famous throughout the world. Street – salesmen promise that the goods are of the highest quality and much cheaper than those you can buy in the West End.

Traditionally someone born in the East End is known as a **“cockney”** although this name is now given to anyone who speaks like a Londoner. Typically they change certain vowel sounds so that the sound in ‘late’ becomes more like that in “light”. Like some foreign learners of English they seem to have a few problems with “th” and use an “f” instead: “nuffink like it”.

The East End is the most densely populated district of London. Thus we may say that the East End is **the hands of London**, those hands which built the banks of the City, the palaces, hotels, theatres, rich houses and department stores in the West End.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- Cape Trafalgar – мыс Трафальгар
- backbone - позвоночник
- flagship – флагманский корабль
- panel on the pedestal – панель, вставка на пьедестале
- to cast from the cannon – отлить из пушки
- to congregate – собираться, сходиться
- political rallies – политические массовые митинги
- chime – куранты, перезвон
- stirrup – стремя
- dissipation – легкомысленные развлечения, беспутный образ жизни
- brazier – медник
- to char – обжигать, обугливать
- charcoal – древесный уголь
- charity – благотворительность
- insane – душевнобольной
- chimney sweep – трубочист
- to browse – небрежно рассматривать товары
- rewarding – стоящий
- cater for – угождать
- refugee – раскольник, беженец
- bewitching – очаровательный
- red-light district – квартал публичных домов
- gourmand – гурман
- artisan – ремесленник, мастеровой
- hub of life – центр внимания и деятельности
- revolving – вращающийся
- wharf – пристань, причал
- warehouse – товарный склад
- dockland – район доков
- to seal a leak – устранить утечку
- mental flotation tank – воображаемый плавучий резервуар
- hectic pace – лихорадочная скорость
- spree – веселье, кутёж

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Soho, Shaftesbury, Avenue, Leicester, Piccadilly Circus, Eleonor, Knightsbridge, Harrods, Sotheby's, Christie's, Bloomsbury, Jack the Ripper, World War II.

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *an official who lives in a foreign country as the senior representative there of his or her own country;*
 - *the place where ships are loaded and unloaded in a port;*
 - *a public road in a city or town that has houses and buildings on one side or both sides;*
 - *an open area in a town, usually with four sides, surrounded by buildings;*
 - *a large shop that is divided into several parts, each part selling a different type of goods;*
 - *an officer of very high rank in the navy;*
 - *a spirit who is believed to be a messenger or servant of God;*
 - *a building or part of a building where you can buy goods or services;*
 - *the attractive and exciting quality that makes a person, a job or a place seem special, often because of wealth or status;*
 - *a person who is well educated and enjoys activities in which they have to think seriously about things;*
 - *a group of military ships commanded by the same person;*
 - *a person who enjoys eating and eats large amounts of food;*
 - *the white bird that is often used as a symbol of peace;*
 - *a place where you can buy and eat a meal;*
 - *a tall, solid, vertical post, usually round and made of stone, which supports or decorates a building or stands alone as a monument;*
 - *a figure of a person or an animal in stone, metal, etc., usually the same size as in real life or larger;*
- (street, square, glamour, admiral, fleet, column, dove, ambassador, statue, angel, shop, restaurant, department store, gourmand, intellectual, dockland)***

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. *Why is the West End so popular and interesting place for tourists who come here from all over the world?*
2. *What is the main square in the West End? Describe it.*
3. *Why is Piccadilly Circus called 'the heart' of the West End?*

4. *What is the focal point of this street?*
5. *Why is Knightsbridge so famous all over the world?*
6. *Why is Soho called a place of bewitching contrasts?*
7. *What is the atmosphere of Bloomsbury?*
8. *Were there any differences between western and eastern parts of London?*
9. *Why is the East End the most densely populated district of London?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English, using the words and phrases from the texts.

1. В южной части Трафальгарской площади воздвигнута конная статуя короля Карла I. Статуя была выполнена в 1633, но из-за начавшейся революции поставить её не успели. Революционный парламент продал статую одному котельщику, обязав его обязательно перелить её. Котельщик не сделал этого. Когда произошла реставрация королевской власти, эта статуя была воздвигнута на месте эшафота, на котором погибли члены парламента, подписавшие смертный приговор королю.
2. На Трафальгарской площади всегда много народу. По ней идут и едут по делам, прогуливаются и отдыхают на ступеньках музеев, кормят голубей и с ними же фотографируются.
3. Ист-Энд викторианского Лондона представляла из себя гноящуюся язву на лице Англии. Захудалые домишки теснились по обеим сторонам улиц, заполненных зловонными отбросами.
4. Весь Лондон был охвачен ужасом, вызванным убийствами Джека Потрошителя. Ходили различные слухи. Потрошитель – сумасшедший доктор. Польский дикарь. Русский секретный царский агент. Пуританин, выведенный из себя пороками города.
5. . Американский писатель Генри Джеймс описал Лондон так: «Его не назовёшь самым приятным местом, да и удобным местом его не назовёшь, ему безусловно далеко от идеала, Сам не знаю, почему, но несмотря ни на что, это место прекрасно».

Lesson 5

London Museums

There are so many museums in London that it's difficult to name them all. Over 900 museums and art galleries are open to the public in Britain, though many are only small collections.

Those in London contain the most comprehensive English collection of objects of artistic, archaeological, scientific, historical and general interest. Among the best and most popular museums in London are **the British Museum, the Museum of London, the Victoria and Albert Museum, the Science Museum, the National History Museum, the National Maritime Museum, Madam Tussaud's Museum.**



Among the best and most popular London's public art galleries are **the National Gallery, the National Portrait Gallery, the Tate Gallery, the Wallace Collection.**

Many galleries and museums in Britain receive limited financial support from national or local government. Other money is raised through admission fees (although admission to many British museums is free), the sale of postcards, calendars etc. Some galleries obtain money through sponsorship. Many works of art are expensive and galleries can rarely buy them without organizing a public appeal or, in Britain, asking for money from the National Art Collections Fund.

Visiting an art gallery is a popular leisure activity. Galleries and museums are friendlier places than they used to be. Many try to encourage children's interest in art by arranging school visits and many people make their first trip to an art museum with their school class.

The British Museum

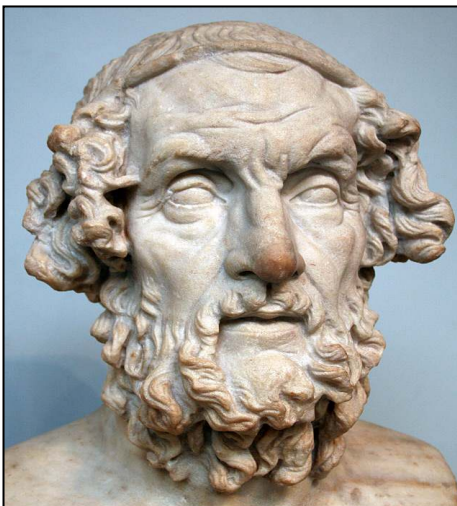


The British museum is one of the most famous and richest museums in the world. The main building is in Bloomsbury. It consists of **the national museum of archaeology and ethnography** and 15-million-volume **national library**, which had been founded by King Henry

VII. The magnificent domed **Reading Room** is used by students from all over the world. Many well-known writers studied and wrote their books there.

The Museum was founded in 1753 by an Act of Parliament. It houses a collection of ancient civilizations. In 1973 the library became part of the newly formed British library. Its nucleus was formed by the priceless collections of Sir Robert Cotton, whose manuscripts had been acquired at the end of the 17th century and stored away in vaults at Westminster. There are many giant statues, works of art, antiquities, original documents and letters in the Museum. Typical of its collection: **the Gutenberg Bible** of 1454, **Shakespeare's First Folio** of 1623, the original copy of **the Magna Carta**, **Aristotle's 'Constitution of Athens'**, **the Elgin marbles**. It is a set of marble sculptures of the 5th century BC from the outside of the **Parthenon** in Athens. They were bought in 1801 by Lord Elgin from the Turkish authorities who were governing Greece at that time. Elgin sold them to the British government in 1816. The Greek government has asked Britain to return them to Greece many times.

Among the important archaeological exhibits are the **'Rosetta Stone'**, which dates



from 195 BC and was the key to understanding Egyptian picture writing, **hieroglyphs**. It came from an old wall in the village of Rosetta in Egypt. The writing tells of battles of the time; Egyptian mummies of kings and queens.

The Ethnographical Department, renamed the Museum of Mankind, is devoted to the art and culture of primitive peoples. Free introductory tours include The World of Asia, Europe, the Ancient Near East, Early Egypt and Nubia, and Treasures of the Islamic World.

It's impossible to list here more than a tiny fraction of the wealth of objects that the museum contains. Visitors are advised to equip themselves with a guide book and select a number of specific exhibits that can be comfortably looked at in the time available. Admission is free.

The Natural History Museum



The Natural History Museum is a big museum in London. It was originally part of the British Museum but has been independently run since 1963. The Museum is housed in a vast and elaborate 19th century Romanesque style building faced with terracotta slabs bearing animals, birds and fishes moulded in relief.

It has 5 departments, covering **botany, entomology, mineralogy, paleontology** and **zoology**. The museum's collections are so large that the discovery of previously unknown insects in the collections is not uncommon.

The central hall houses an exhibition of dinosaurs. One of the first things you'll see on entering is the massive reconstructed skeleton of Diplodocus – one of the largest creatures that ever lived – and the 90 foot blue whale. They always bring forth gasps of astonishment from the visitor who never before can have experienced anything of such frightening proportions. On the first floor is the **Mammal Gallery**, where many rare species may be seen. Also here is **the Mineral Gallery**.

The second floor contains a gallery on **British natural history**. The museum is famous for its reconstructions of huge prehistoric animals. There is a full-scale model of the blue whale, 27 m. long.

Learning all about Mankind, and how our bodies work in the Human **Biology gallery** provides many absorbing and amusing activities – a chance for you to become part of the exhibition. Find out, amongst other things, how our brains work and just what we look like inside, as well as testing your reflexes, memory, colour vision and powers of observation.

Entered through a massive natural rock-face, the section of the Museum exploring the geology of the Earth itself offers many new and fascinating insights into how the planet evolved and how we obtain our light, heat and power. Nearby is the unique opportunity to experience an Earthquake firsthand.

The Museum of London

The Museum of London is the largest and most comprehensive city museum in the world. It is dedicated to the story of London and its people – an exciting story which begins with the first hunter-gatherers arriving in the Thames valley 400 000 years ago.



The Museum of London has many displays. They tell the story of London from prehistory onwards to the 20th century. These include reconstructions of **Roman life**, **Viking's weapons**, and a scene with sound effects depicting **the Fire of London**, and the **Lord Mayor's coach**. The London Wall Walk is a two-mile route laid out along the remains of Roman City Walls. It starts at the Museum of London, and ends at the Tower of London.

Set apart from the public displays are special departments which specialize in Prints, Drawings and Paintings of London, and Costumes and Textiles. There is also a research library containing a vast amount of material relating to London.

The Victoria and Albert Museum

This is a national museum of art and design, established in 1852. It contains over 4 million objects, including important collections of painting, sculpture, textiles, furniture and other objects from around the world, and is one of London's most popular museums.

It's a treasure house of vast dimensions and wealth. Here you experience history rather than just see it.

Here are magnificent collections of Renaissance. Amongst the best-known as well as the largest objects in the V & A are the seven great **Cartoons by Raphael** in the Cartoon Court. The subjects of the cartoons are the Acts of the Apostles in the New Testament. The Italian Cast Court houses casts taken from Italian works of art of the Medieval and Renaissance periods, up to about the year 1580. Here are replicas of such great works as **Donatello's statue of St George, Michelangelo's David** and so on.

The museum is rich in English Tudor and Elizabethan art and European decorative and applied art of 1600-1900.



The museum has the largest collection of Indian, Japanese, Chinese and Islamic art.

Among the most popular ones is undoubtedly **the Dress Collection**. The English costumes dating from the 16th century are displayed here. Spanning four centuries of fashion, this popular Gallery reveals fine and exciting examples of European style. The oldest is a boy's shirt from the 1540's.

A gallery full of silent **musical instruments** may seem strange to some museum visitors. After all, the purpose of musical instruments is to produce sounds and to please the ear. The answer is that the instruments in this gallery have been acquired mainly for their decorative appearance, not for their musical qualities. The highlight of the collection is the harpsichord made in 1521 (one of the oldest harpsichords to survive).

In museum's Jewellery collection you'll find a comprehensive display of 6,000 pieces of jewellery from Ancient Egypt to the present day.

In 1888 the eldest daughter of the great English painter **John Constable** presented to the museum the selection of her father's works which is the greatest of works by Constable in the world.

The museum also contains outstanding collection of English and Continental **sculpture**, a special collection of tiny **miniature portraits**.

For those people who wish to see some of the most famous objects in the museum's collection, the museum recommends:

1. **The Great Bed of Ware.** The gigantic Elizabethan oak bed perhaps is the most famous piece of furniture in the world. It is thought to have been made in 1580 at Ware in Hertfordshire. It's big enough to hold 8 people. The people who slept in it, by tradition carved their names on it.
2. **The Gloucester Candlestick.** The famous work of medieval art for the abbot of a Benedictine monastery in Gloucester in the early 12th century.
3. **The Ardabil Carpet.** This immense object takes its name from the shrine at Ardabil in Persia, and was made in 1539-1540. Brought to England in the late 1880s, it was purchased by the museum in 1893.
4. **Tipu's Tiger.** The painted wooden effigy of a tiger mauling a British soldier was made for Tipu Sultan, the ruler in India at the end of the 18th century. It contains a miniature organ, probably of French manufacture, which stimulates the tiger's roars as well as the groans of its victims.
5. **Roubiliac's Statue of Handel.** It was ordered for the London pleasure gardens at Vauxhall in 1738. It is one of the first statues of a living artist and is unusually informal in the way of that it shows Handel in his dressing-gown and with his shirt unbuttoned.

The Science Museum

The Science Museum is Britain's largest museum of science and technology, in South Kensington, established in 1909. This museum doesn't look very interesting from the outside. It's surrounded by other museums which are much more beautiful. It contains many objects from the history of science, and has a large number of displays which the public can touch and operate as well as a large cinema.

There are five floors of galleries. Each gallery is filled with objects, models and diagrams which illustrate a particular subject in science of engineering. For example, there

is one **corridor full of clocks**, from Roman and Egyptian ones to modern times. You can look up from the central hall and catch a glimpse of **telescopes, cameras, steam engines and computers**. At the top of the building, under the roof, there is one huge room full of **aeroplanes**. You can see French, British, German and Japanese planes from the First and Second World Wars, and models of modern passenger planes like Concorde.

In the main entrance hall is the **Foucault Pendulum**, the gentle movement of which visibly demonstrates the rotation of the earth on its own axes.

The ground floor galleries explain the development of motive power and contain most the museum's large exhibits, including an 18th-century atmospheric beam engine from a colliery in Derbyshire. Gallery houses an exhibition on exploration. Exhibits here include the **Apollo 10 Space Capsule** and a stimulated moon base. The huge new wing of the ground floor is devoted to road and rail transport. Here may be seen the world's **first locomotive**.

On the first, second and third floors there are galleries dealing with astronomy, printing, chemistry, nuclear physics, navigation, photography, electricity, communications, etc. The exhibits range from a superb collection of **model ships** to the **first television transmitter**. The collection of medicine and medical history are on the fifth and sixth floors.

With lots of the exhibits in the museum you are encouraged to push buttons, turn wheels and operate the models of trains or engines. All sorts of exhibits light up, rotate and make noises. Of all London museums this is the one most loved by children and their fathers.

Madam Tussaud's Museum

Madam Tussaud's Museum is the world's most famous wax museum. The famous collection of waxworks was founded in Paris by Madam Tussaud. It moved to England in 1802. Marie Grosholz (Madam Tussaud) was born in Strasbourg in 1761. Her mother worked as housekeeper of physician who modeled anatomical subjects in wax. Then they moved to Paris. Doctor Curtis schooled her in the techniques of wax portraiture. She was invited to the royal court to assist in artistic education King's sister, Madam Elizabeth.

During revolution Marie and her mother were imprisoned. Soon Marie was asked to prepare the death masks of Marie Antoinette and Louis XVI.

In 1794 Curtis died and Marie inherited the business. She married a French engineer



Francois Tussaud. France was suffering deprivation and Marie's exhibition was struggling to survive.. In 1802 she left her husband and baby son in Paris, while she and her elder son toured the exhibition around the British Isles. In 1826 her younger son joined them on the road in Britain. Marie was to see neither France nor her husband again. She died in 1850 at 90. In the days before television, cinema and radio, Madam Tussaud's figures were a sensation.

In 1884, her grandson John Randal Tussaud put the wax figures into museum not far from Baker Street where they still remain for more than a century now. Over 2 million visitors go there to see over 500 lifelike figures of the famous people from past and present. It consists of several halls "where the people meet the people": the members of the Royal family, film stars, politicians, rock-and pop-music stars, sportsmen, all portrayed with an uncanny realism. There is a great accuracy of detail and authentic clothing – often given from the wardrobe of the person depicted. Most of the figures – historic and modern – were modeled from life. The wax figures are standing and sitting, their eyes are sparkling, and sometimes you feel uncomfortable in their company. The politicians stand in a solemn silence looking at you, watching each other: Winston Churchill, Adolf Hitler, Joseph Stalin, Roosevelt, Margaret Thatcher, Oliver Cromwell, Nikita Khrushov, Michael Gorbachev etc.

Superstars and Legends exposition presents those who have become legends: Charlie Chaplin, Marilyn Monroe, Elvis Presley, Michael Jackson and others. Sir Charlie Chaplin (1889-1977) was British film actor. He has been modelled many times. His figure was lent to the National Portrait Gallery in 1985 for an exhibition about his life. He was knighted in 1975.

200 Years (hall) displays figures from the last two centuries. **Sleeping Beauty** is an early example of animatronics: her chest rises and falls to mimic breathing. It was modeled in 1765.

The Grand Hall on the second floor assembled here Kings and Queens, the world's leading public figures. The earliest figure on display is **William I of England**. In the Grand Hall you can see the British Royal Family tree. **Henry VIII** is represented with all his 6 wives. Each of the figures has been carefully researched from paintings. Every costume is made by historical costume specialists. **The Duke of Wellington** and his adversary **Napoleon** are seen looking at a model of the Battle of Waterloo. **Elizabeth II** has been modeled on many occasions. The figure shows her with Prince Philip, the Duke of Edinburgh.

You can 'meet' the well-known scientists in the museum such as Isaac Newton, Albert Einstein etc.

In the **Chamber of Horrors** you may view the wax figures of notorious criminals and their executioners: Dracula, hanging Guy Fawkes, the Guillotine, and even some scandalous criminals as Jack the Ripper. There you can find also famous pirates of the past such as Francis Drake.

The Planet and Space Zones on the first floor form an exiting prelude to the Planetarium Star Shows. Next door, under a green copper dome, is **the Planetarium**, where the wonders of the heavens are displayed by means of an ingenious projector, accompanied by an interesting commentary. Here you'll enjoy a unique virtual reality voyage of discovery.

The Spirit of London covers a period of 400 years of London's history. There is the figure of William Shakespeare seated at his writing desk carefully fashioning prose for Hamlet.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

-comprehensive collection – обширная коллекция

-admission fee – плата за вход

- appeal* – просьба, обращение
- nucleus* – центр, ядро
- elaborate* – искусно сделанный
- slab* – плита, пластина
- to mould* – отливать в форму, формовать
- forth gasp* – затруднённое дыхание
- mammal* – млекопитающие
- to evolve* – развивать, эволюционировать
- firsthand* – с первых рук, испытать на себе
- dimension* – размер
- cartoons* – этюды для фрески
- New Testament* – Новый Завет
- cast* – гипсовый слепок
- replica* – точная копия, репродукция
- to span* – охватывать
- harpsichord* – клавесин
- candlestick* – подсвечник
- shrine* – гробница
- effigy* – изображение
- to maul* – терзать
- groan* – стон
- pendulum* – маятник
- colliery* – каменноугольная соль
- television transmitter* – телепередатчик
- wax* – воск, восковой
- deprivation* – лишения
- uncanny* – сверхъестественный
- authentic* – подлинный
- to lend* – одалживать на время, предоставлять
- adversary* – враг, соперник
- notorious* – общеизвестный, пользующийся дурной славой
- ingenious projector* – искусный проектор
- hands-on exhibits* – экспонаты, которые можно трогать руками
- compelling* – неотразимый
- host* – множество
- predecessor* – предшественник, предок
- mezzanine* – антресоли (архитект.)

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: *Madam Tussaud's Museum, the Wallace Collection, Exhibition gallery, the Gutenberg Bible, Shakespeare's First Folio, the Magna Carta, Aristotle's 'Constitution of Athens', the Elgin marbles, Parthenon in Athens, Viking's weapons, Lord Mayor's coach, Raphael, Michelangelo, John Constable, the Gloucester Candlestick, Napoleon, Florence Nightingale, battle of Waterloo, the Courtauld Gallery, Van Dyck.*

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- the state of being very old or ancient;
- the art and study of designing buildings;
- a group of objects often of the same sort;
- a building to which objects of artistic, cultural, historical or scientific interest are kept and shown to the public;
- a painting, drawing or photograph of a person, especially of the head and shoulders;
- a work of art that is a solid figure or object made by carving or shaping wood, stone, clay, metal, etc.;
- a room or building for showing works of art, especially to the public;
- very old book or document that was written by hand before printing was invented;
- a society, its culture and its way of life during a particular period of time or in a particular part of the world;
- examples of objects such as paintings, drawings or sculptures;
- a solid substance that is made from various fats and oils and used for making candles, polish, models, etc. It becomes soft when it's heated;
- a figure of a person or an animal in stone, metal, etc., usually the same size as in real life or larger;
- the act or art of using paint to produce pictures;
- the study of the remains of animals or plants in rocks as a guide to the history of life on earth;
- a collection of things that are shown to the public;
- an animal that lived millions of years ago but is now extinct;
- the study of cultures of the past, and of periods of history by examining the remains of buildings and objects found in the ground;
- a body of a human being or an animal that has been mummified;
- the scientific description of different races and cultures;
- the scientific study of animals and their behaviour;
- a picture or symbol of an object, representing a word, syllable or sound, especially as used in ancient Egyptian and other writing systems;
- the scientific study of minerals;
- the scientific study of plants and their structure;

(museum, gallery, collection, art, sculpture, painting, exhibition, archaeology, ethnography, civilization, manuscript, statue, antiquity, hieroglyph, mummy, botany, mineralogy, paleontology, zoology, dinosaur, portrait, wax, architecture)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. Are there many museums and galleries in London? What are the best and the most popular among them?*
- 2. Is visiting London museums and galleries a popular leisure activity?*
- 3. When was the British Museum founded? What interesting collections does it house?*
- 4. How many sections are there in the Natural History Museum?*
- 5. Why is the Museum of London considered to be the most comprehensive city museum in the world?*
- 6. Why is the Victoria and Albert Museum one of London's most popular museums? What collections are interesting to see?*
- 7. What would you like to see in the Science Museum?*
- 8. What is the history of Madam Tussaud's Museum? What halls are represented in the museum?*
- 9. What will you discover in the London Transport Museum and in the National Army Museum?*
- 10. Where in London can we know the story of the cinema, television and video?*
- 11. What kind of paintings can we watch in the National Gallery?*
- 12. What is the difference between the National Gallery and the National Portrait Gallery?*
- 13. Why is the Tate Gallery called the national gallery of British Art?*
- 14. Who helped to organize the Courtauld Gallery? What is the main collection in this gallery that worth seeing?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English, using the words and phrases from the texts.

- 1. Все места, находящиеся в руках Национального фонда, очень хорошо организованы. Музеи прекрасно оборудованы и поддерживаются усилиями профессионалов.*

2. Большой популярностью пользуются сувенирные магазины Национального фонда, потому что они предлагают всё, что ты увидел в музее, только в современном исполнении – посуду, украшения, косметику, интересные книги по истории.
3. Сегодня число добровольных членов Национального фонда уже превысило 3 миллиона, а дубовые листочки, её символ, развешаны по всей Англии, указывая на то, сколько мест находятся под её покровительством.
4. Прибыв в Англию по приглашению короля, Ван Дейк удивительно быстро понял особенности национального характера англичан и усвоил национальные особенности английской живописи. Он рисует не рыцарей в латах, а кавалеров в придворных и безупречных костюмах. Благородство их осанки испанское, живость взгляда – французская, а респектабельность – чисто английская.
5. Два гения английской живописи – Констебль и Тернер – были ярко выраженными романтиками, однако, их полотна невозможно спутать.
6. Полотна Констебля насыщены голубыми и зелёными тонами, которые сияют, как солнечный луч. Говоря о живописном методе Тернера, критики всегда подчёркивают его личностный характер. Он интересовался больше игрой света и тени.

Lesson 6

IMPORTANT AREAS OF BRITISH LIFE

EDUCATION IN BRITAIN

The public school system

Private education comprises 'independent schools'. Some independent schools are known as '*public schools*' and, despite their name, are not part of the state education system. The possibility of confusion is especially great because in Scotland and in the USA schools organized by the government are called '*public schools*' and the education provided by the government is called the '*public school system*'.

Independent schools in Britain provide education of the grammar school type and are completely independent of local authorities. They receive a grant-in-aid from the Ministry of Education. They include the preparatory schools (prep) and public schools (for boys and girls over 13).

Public schools were originally grammar schools which offered free education to the public and were under public management. This was in contrast to private schools which were privately owned by the teachers. Since the 19th century, the term '*public school*' has been applied to grammar schools that began taking fee-paying pupils.

About 10 % of pupils go to private or independent schools. The public school system takes fee-paying pupils (and some scholarship pupils who have won a place in a competitive entrance exam and whose parents don't pay). The fees are between £5,000 and £15,000 per year. The main advantage of these schools is that discipline is better, so teachers and pupils waste less time. The school year is divided into three terms. Schools have 13 weeks' holiday per year: 6 weeks in the summer, two weeks each at Christmas and Easter, and three half-term weeks. The year starts early in September.

Private schools had been used in the 19th century to educate the sons of the upper and upper-middle classes. At these 'public schools' the emphasis was on '*character-building*' and the development of '*team spirit*' rather than on academic achievement. This involved the development of distinctive customs and attitudes, the wearing of distinctive

clothes and the use of specialized items of vocabulary. They were all 'boarding schools' (that is the pupils lived in them), so they had a deep and lasting influence on their pupils. Their aim was to prepare young men to take up positions in the higher ranks of the army, in business, the legal profession, the civil service and politics. When the pupils from these schools finished their education, they formed the ruling elite, retaining the distinctive habits and vocabulary which they had learnt at school. They formed a closed group, to a great extent separate from the rest of society. Entry into this group was difficult for anybody who had had a different education.

Stereotypical public schools were for boys only from the age of 13. The public school system enforced their rules with the use of physical punishment and had a reputation for a relatively great amount of homosexual activity. "*Fagging*" was a public school custom in which the "*preps*" acted as servants of the older boys called "*prefects*". Much attention was paid to team sports. There were not at all luxurious and comfortable there.

However, these days, there is not a single-sex public school in the country. There have been a fairly large number of girls' public schools for the last hundred years, and more recently a few schools have started to admit both boys and girls. Many schools admit day pupils as well as boarders, and some are day-schools only.

Many public schools are **boarding schools** where students live during term-time. Most have a **house system**, with **boarders** living in one of several **houses** under the charge of a **housemaster** or **housemistress**. A house has about 50 boys. Now '*prefects*' don't have so much power or have been abolished. Fagging has disappeared. At most schools pupils have to wear a school uniform and at some of the oldest schools this is very old-fashioned.

Sport is an important part of the curriculum and schools compete against each other in cricket, rugby, football, hockey, rowing, etc. But there is less emphasis on team sport now and more on academic achievement. Life for the pupils is more physically comfortable than it used to be.

Many schools have a chapel where pupils attend Anglican services and there are also a small number of Roman Catholic schools.

Many of Britain's 200 public schools are very old and famous. They include **Eton**, **Harrow**¹ and **Winchester**², and **Cheltenham Ladies' College**³ and **Roedean**⁴ for girls. Nearly all the men holding leading position in Great Britain were educated at public schools.

Notes

¹**Harrow** – is a well-known British public school for boys in north-west London, established in 1572. It is considered to be one of the major boys' schools in Britain and many important people were educated there, including Winston Churchill, a great British statesman.

²**Winchester** – is a well-known public school in Winchester (in southern England). It was established by William of Wykeham (the bishop of Winchester from 1367 to 1404) in 1382 and was the first of its kind. A pupil or former pupil at Winchester College school is named Wykehamist.

³**Cheltenham Ladies' College** – is one of the best-known British public schools for girls, established in Cheltenham (in Gloucestershire, England) in 1853.

⁴**Roedean** – is a leading British public school for girls near Brighton. It was established in 1885.

A much higher proportion of students from public schools win university places, especially to Oxford and Cambridge Universities, than from state schools. Former public school students may also have an advantage when applying for jobs because of the '**old school tie**', and the '**old boy network**' through which a former public school pupil is more likely to give a job to somebody from a public school than to someone from a school in the state system. Some people send their children to public school mainly for this reason; others believe public schools provide a better education than state schools.

At university students work towards a **degree**, and most courses end in a series of exams called **finals**. Students studying for a first degree are called **undergraduates**. When they have been awarded a degree, they are known as **graduates**. Many take an **honours degree** which is awarded in one of several classes. The highest class is a first. The second class is often split between upper second and lower second, and below that is the third class. If a student doesn't meet the standard for an honours degree, he or she may be awarded a **pass degree** (i.e. not an honours degree).

Bachelor's Degree is the first degree that you get when you study at a university, most commonly as **BA (Bachelor of Arts)** or **BSc (Bachelor of Science)**.

Master's Degree (postgraduate degree) is a higher degree in British universities, usually requiring one year of study. It is between a bachelor's degree and doctorate. Master's degrees include **Master of Arts**, **Master of Science** and **Master of Business Administration**. At Scottish universities, however, these titles are used for first degrees.

Doctorate is the highest type of university degree. This usually carries the title **PhD (Doctor of Philosophy)**. The time taken to complete a doctorate varies, but it is generally expected to involve three years of more or less full-time study.

Higher education

Oxford University

Oxford was an important town in southern England, west of London, even before the University came into existence; it's mentioned in the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" of 912 as '*Oxenforde*', the ford, where oxen could cross the river.

The University of Oxford was established in the mid 12th century, in 1214. By 1300 there were already 1 500 students. At that time Oxford was a wealthy town, but by the middle of the 14th century it was poorer, because of a decline in trade and because of the terrible plague, which killed many people in England. The relations between the students and the townspeople were very unfriendly, and there was often fighting in the streets.

Nowadays there are about 12 000 students in Oxford and over 1000 teachers. Outstanding scientists work in the numerous colleges of the University.

The buildings of its many colleges are a major feature of the city, which is a tourist centre as well as an important centre of academic research. Oxford is also famous for its architecture.

Academic life in Oxford is full and varied. Some of the occasions are solemn, some exciting, and a few frivolous. The three principal annual events are **Commemoration**, **Congregation** and **Convocation**. The first is mainly concerned with the conferring of Honorary Degrees, the ceremony commemorating the opening of the **Sheldonian**

Theatre¹ in 1669. Meetings of Congregation and Convocation are conducted with all the splendor and ceremony which tradition demands.

Punting is favoured by those, whose tastes in boating are for relaxation. “*Punt*” is a word often used in both Oxford and Cambridge too. It refers to a long flat-bottomed boat with sloping ends, rather like a gondola, which is moved by pushing a long pole in the water but **rowing** is taken very seriously by many undergraduates and there is great rivalry between college crews. The height of a rowing man’s ambition is to row against Cambridge in the annual contest on the Thames.

Cambridge University

Cambridge is situated at a distance of 70 miles from London; the greater part of the town lies on the left bank of the river **Cam** crossed by several bridges. The dominating factor in Cambridge is its well-known University, a centre of education and learning, closely connected with the life and thought of Great Britain. **Newton, Byron, Darwin, Rutherford** and many other scientists and writers were educated at Cambridge. In Cambridge everything centers on the University and its colleges.

Notes

¹***Sheldonian Theatre** – is a large theatre that is part of Oxford University. It was designed by Christopher Wren and built in 1663. It is used for university ceremonies and concerts (not plays).*

The oldest college is **Peterhouse**, which was founded in 1284. The most recent is **Robinson College**, which was opened in 1977. The best known building in Cambridge is **King’s College Chapel** designed by Henry VI.² Lofty spires and turrets and fine stained glass windows are notable features of the Chapel, which is one of the major monuments of English medieval architecture. Its choir of boys and undergraduates is also very well known.

The University was exclusively for men until 1970 when the first women’s college was opened. Another was opened two years later and a third in 1954. In the 1970s, most colleges opened their doors to both men and women. Almost all colleges now are mixed. Until today there are more than twenty colleges in Cambridge.

There is a close connection between the University and colleges, though they are quite separate in theory and practice.

Each college has its own building, its own internal organization, its own staff and students. In order to enter the university, one must first apply to a college and become a member of the university through the college. The colleges are governed by twenty or thirty “fellows”. Fellows of a college are “tutors” (teachers, often called ‘*dons*’). Each tutor has 10-12 students reading under his guidance. Tutors teach their own subject to those students in the college who are studying it, and they are responsible for their progress.

Every college is governed by a ‘*dean*’. Discipline is looked after by ‘*proctors*’ and numerous minor officials called ‘*bulldogs*’.

The University is like a federation of colleges. It arranges the courses, the lectures and the examinations, and grants the degrees.

A college is a group of buildings forming a square with a green lawn in the centre. An old tradition doesn’t allow the students to walk on the grass: this is the privilege of professors and headstudents only. The most popular place from which to view them is from **the Backs**¹, where the college grounds go down to the river Cam.

Notes

¹*the Backs* – is the attractive area at the back of some of the colleges of Cambridge University in England, between the colleges and the river Cam.

Students study at the University for four years, three terms a year. Long vacation lasts about three months. There are many libraries at Cambridge; some of them have rare collections of books: the earliest books by Shakespeare and other great writers, early description of Russia by an Englishman on diplomatic service there in 1591 and so on.

The Cambridge Folk Festival

Every year, in summer, thousands of folk music fans arrive in Cambridge for one of the biggest festivals of folk music in England. The festival is held in the grounds of an old house, where there is plenty of room for people to put up their tents if they want to stay overnight.

The Cambridge Folk Festival is very well organized, and there are never any of the serious problems which can be caused by large crowds.

Until 1964, undergraduates had to wear black cloaks, called 'gowns', but now they are obliged to wear them for dinner and some lectures. This tradition is fast disappearing, but one which is still upheld is that of punting on the Cam. It's a favourite summer pastime for students to take food, drink, guitars and girlfriends on to a punt and sail down the river, trying very hard to forget about exams. Many students feel that they have not been christened into the University until they have fallen from a punt into the River Cam. This has almost become a tourist attraction.

Students also have an official excuse "to let themselves loose" once a year (usually in November) on **Rag Day**. On this day, hundreds of different schemes are thought up to collect money for charity, and it is not unusual to see students in the streets playing guitars, pianos, violins, singing, dancing, fishing in drains for money, or even just lying in beds suspended over the street swinging a bucket for money to be thrown into. Such tradition, in such beautiful surroundings, often helps to make Cambridge almost as idyllic today as it was in the 13th century.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- decentralized system – децентрализовать*
- to phase in of a compulsory National Curriculum – постепенно вводить обязательный национальный курс обучения (учебный план)*
- nursery school – ясли*
- infant school – школа для малышей*
- fractions – дроби*
- add – прибавление*
- multiply – умножение*
- divider numbers – делители*
- to carry out a policy of streaming – проводить распределение учащихся по классам с учётом их способностей*
- under the guidance of the teacher – под руководством учителя*
- an assessment test – тест, суммирующий знания*
- comprehensive school – общеобразовательная школа*

- to wear academic gown and mortarboards – носить мантию и головной убор с квадратным верхом
- school badge – школьный значок, символ
- irrespective of their intelligence – независимо от их умственных способностей
- to the full – в полной мере
- vocational Qualifications – профессионально-техническое образование (подготовленность)
- to receive a grant-in-aid – получать дотацию
- preparatory school – подготовительная (частная) школа для мальчиков 8-13 лет (обычно готовит для поступления в колледж)
- to pay fee – платить за учёбу
- fag – младший ученик (в английских школах); to fag – оказывать услуги старшим ученикам младшими учениками
- to have learning disabilities – быть умственно отсталым
- behavioural problems - проблемы психического характера
- to comprise – включать, заключать в себе
- to provide – обеспечивать, предоставлять
- to apply – относиться
- competitive entrance exam – конкурсный вступительный экзамен
- boarding school – пансион (закрытое учебное заведение; школа-интернат)
- boarder – пансионер
- to enforce – усиливать, подкреплять
- to abolish – отменять
- to gain – получать
- undergraduate – студент
- graduate – выпускник, окончивший любое учебное заведение; абитуриент
- pass degree – диплом без отличия
- proctor – проктор, надзиратель, инспектор (в Оксфордском и Кембриджском университетах); надзиратель, следящий за студентами во время экзаменов (в американских вузах)
- to monitor – контролировать, проверять
- drop-out – выбывший, исключённый или бросивший учёбу учащийся
- drain – канава
- to suspend – подвешивать
- to swing – качать, размахивать
- relic – реликвия; след, остаток
- foundation – учреждение
- to attach – прикреплять

- fan-vault ceiling* – сводчатый потолок
- jade* – минерал жёлто-зелёного цвета
- ceramics* – керамика, керамические изделия
- fan* – веер, опахало
- sampler* – образец вышивки
- array* – масса, множество
- exhibit* – экспонат
- to discern* – различать
- to boast* – гордиться
- tutor* – наставник; репетитор; руководитель группы студентов (в английских университетах; младший преподаватель высшего учебного заведения в Америке)

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Eton, Henry VI, Roman, Catholic, Harrow, Winchester, Cheltenham College, Roedean, East Anglia, Lancaster, Sussex, Warwick, Malaysia, Indonesia, Sheldonian Theatre, Titian, Veronese, Rubens, Van Dyck, Gainsborough, Mone, Renoir, Glasgow, Edinburgh, Aberdeen, Durham, Birmingham, Manchester.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a formal written, spoken or practical test, especially at school or college, to see how much you know about a subject;
- a process of teaching, training and learning, especially in schools or colleges, to improve knowledge and develop skills;
- a person in a university who is in charge of a department of studies;
- a person who is in charge of a university, college or school in Britain;
- an institution at the highest level of education where you can study for a degree or do research;
- a long shallow boat with a flat bottom and square ends which is moved by pushing the end of a long pole against the bottom of a river;
- a person who has completed their school studies;
- a university or college student who is studying for their first degree;
- a place where children go to be educated;

▪ a place where students go to study or to receive training after they have left school (in Britain); a university where students can study for a degree after they have left school;

▪ a second university degree;

▪ a teacher in a school, especially a private school;

▪ an official document proving that you have completed a course of study or passed an exam;

▪ a person who has a first university degree;

▪ the subjects that are included in a course of study or taught in a school, college, etc.;

▪ a school where children can live during the term;

(education, school, university, curriculum, schoolmaster, rector, dean, boarding school, exam, Certificate of Education, degree, undergraduate, graduate, Bachelor, Master, punt, college)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What was Britain before the 12th century like? Was it literate or illiterate?
2. How was British people's intellectual life begun?
3. How did the first universities appear? Why?
4. Who was William Caxton? How was the educational system improving in Britain from the 15th century to the 19th century?
5. What are the basic features of the British educational system today?
6. Is education compulsory in Britain nowadays? Is a choice of schools wide in Britain?
7. What is the main aim of the British Government? How do they try to improve their educational system?
8. What does private education give? What is the difference between Public schools and State Secondary Schools?
9. What famous public schools in Britain do you know?
10. Do examination results important in Britain? Why?
11. Are British universities open to everyone? What is the negative side of Higher education in Britain?
12. What is the history of Oxford University? What did you know about academic life in Oxford?

13. *What is the history of Cambridge University? What did you know about academic life in Cambridge?*
14. *What other types of universities are in Britain?*
15. *What does Further Education mean? What does it offer?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English

1. Оксфорд состоит из 40 автономных колледжей, каждый из которых – это отдельный институт с библиотекой, учебными и жилыми помещениями для студентов и преподавателей.

2. Частные школы очень дорогие, будь они дневные или школы-интернаты, поэтому ученики в них – это дети привилегированной элиты общества.

3. Хотя большая часть английских королей училась в Кембридже и только двое – в Оксфорде.

4. Общеобразовательная школа в Британии получает наименее одарённых детей, которые просто остаются там до 16-летнего возраста, после чего идут на производство.

5. Ученики публичных школ растут убеждёнными, что всё лучшее в мире является британским: суда и сукна, секретные службы и зоопарки, дворцовые и самолёты.

6. Влияние Оксфорда и Кембриджа направлено на то, чтобы сделать большинство студентов консервативными. Эти университеты видят свою роль в том, чтобы формировать тип человека, предназначенного управлять страной.

7. Выпускник публичной школы – это обычно энтузиаст спорта, человек весьма безразличный, а порой поразительно неосведомлённый во всём, что лежит за пределами Британии. Он обладает хорошими манерами, прямодушен и дисциплинирован. Он готов служить государству, идеализирует его, считает, что нужно ходить в церковь, хотя не обязательно делает это сам. Он верит в газету 'Times' и в монархию.

8. Спальни в публичных школах, размещающихся обычно в старинных зданиях, построенных в стиле готики, никогда не отапливаются, как и раздевалки при спортивных залах.

9. Будущим джентльменам, школьникам Итона, положено являться на занятия в наряде, который в наш век носят лишь дирижёры и метрдотели: фрак и белый галстук бабочкой.

10. Из стен Итона вышло 18 премьер-министров. Эта школа напоминает наследственный клуб для политических деятелей. В её традициях развивать у воспитанников профессиональный интерес к политике.

11. Если Итон – самое династическое из частных учебных заведений, то Винчестеру свойственно уделять большее внимание отбору по способностям. Там строже и сложнее вступительные экзамены. Винчестер даёт более основательную подготовку для университета, а также славится воспитанием таких качеств джентльмена, как самообладание и невозмутимость (англичане называют это «жёсткой верхней губой»).

RELIGION IN BRITAIN

FAMOUS ENGLISH CHURCHES AND CATHEDRALS

In Britain churches are landmarks in every town and village. Their tower or spire (a cone –shaped structure on top of a small tower) can often be seen from far away. Churches are used for worship by the Church of England, Roman Catholics and other groups, while some Nonconformist Churches use chapels or halls.

Cathedrals may belong to either the Church of England or the Roman Catholic Church. Many cathedrals were built as part of a monastery, for example **Durham**. Durham was started in the 11th century by Benedictine monks. Some of these cathedrals are called **minsters (York Minster)** and they were originally centers for teaching Christianity.

A cathedral is the headquarters of a bishop or archbishop. Canterbury Cathedral is the headquarters of the Archbishop of Canterbury, who is head of the Church of England.

Many people visit churches and cathedrals to admire their architecture. In Britain churches are usually built of stone with a **tower** or **spire** at the west end. Bells are placed high up in the tower and rung by long ropes before services. In villages the church is approached through a gate, sometimes with a roof over it, which leads into a churchyard where people are buried. The main entrance is usually on the south side.

Cathedrals are large churches, usually built in the shape of a long cross with a central tower. Older cathedrals are often in a quiet grassy cathedral close.

The earliest stone churches date from the **Anglo-Saxon** period (6-11th centuries). **Norman** churches, from the 11th and 12th centuries, are massive structures. Bounded arches over doorways and windows are a distinctive feature of Norman Architecture. (for example, **Durham**).

Westminster Abbey

Westminster Abbey is one of the oldest buildings in London and one of the most important religious centers in the country. Many kings and queens and famous people are buried or commemorated there.

Westminster Abbey is a fine Gothic building, which stands opposite the Houses of Parliament. It is the work of many hands and different ages. The oldest part of the building dates from the 8th century. It was a monastery – **the West Minster**. In the 11th century



Edward the Confessor after years spent in France founded a great Norman Abbey. He built it on the site of an old church called Saint Peter's. The Abbey was blessed at Christmas in 1065 and Edward died a week later. Edward the Confessor was made a saint after his death and he was buried in a special chapel dedicated to him.

Nine English kings and queens are buried in Saint Edward's Chapel including Henry V. When he was buried his battle horses were led up to the High Altar. In 200 years Henry III decided to pull down the Norman Abbey and built more beautiful one after the style then prevailing in France. Since then the Abbey remains the most French of all English Gothic churches, higher than any other English church and much narrower. The towers were built in 1735-1740. One of the greater glories of the Abbey is the Chapel of Henry VII. The Chapel is of stone and glass, so wonderfully cut and sculptured that it seems unreal. It contains an interesting collection of swords and standards of the "Knights of the Bath". The Abbey is famous for its stained glass.

The Abbey has been scene of every **royal coronation** since **William the Conqueror**¹ in 1066. Monarchs are crowned while sitting on the Coronation Throne in the Chapel. The Stone of Scone, a symbol of Scottish royalty, is kept underneath it. It has been used for every Coronation since 1300. Queen Elizabeth II was crowned here in 1953 by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

The Abbey is sometimes compared with a mausoleum because there are tombs and memorials of almost all English monarchs, many statesmen, scientists, writers and musicians. If you go past the magnificent tombstones of kings and queens, some made of gold and precious stones, past the gold- and-silver banners of the Order of the Garter, which are hanging from the ceiling, you will come to **Poet's Corner** where many of the greatest writers are buried: G. Chaucer, Ch. Dickens, T. Hardy, R. Kipling and so on. Though these writers are not buried in Westminster Abbey, there are memorials to William Shakespeare, John Milton, Burns, Byron, W. Scott, W. Thackeray.

Notes:

¹William the Conqueror (1027-1087) – was the king of England from 1066 to 1087. He was the Duke of Normandy, in Northern France, when the English king Edward the Confessor died. William claimed that Edward had promised him the right to be the next king of England. He invaded England and defeated king Harold II at the battle of Hastings in 1066. Later that year he became king. He gave power and land in England to other Normans and built many castles to control the English people.

Here in the Abbey there is also the Tomb of the Unknown Warrior, a symbol of the nation's grief. It commemorates all British soldiers who died in the First World War. The interior of the Abbey is one of the finest achievements of English architecture. It's built of stone with pieces of green, grey and purple marble. There are over 1000 monuments. The memorials provide a history of English monumental sculpture.

In the museum of Abbey Treasures you can see models of the Crown Jewels, used for coronation rehearsals. There are also lifelike models of famous people made after their death.

Westminster Abbey is still a Christian Church with regular services. The abbey is opened daily, but when services are being held certain parts are closed to tourists.

St. Paul's Cathedral

St. Paul's is the most famous church in London. St. Paul's serves as the center of the Church of England in London. The great English architect **Sir Christopher Wren** built the Church between 1675 and 1710 to replace the original St. Paul's, which was destroyed in the Great Fire of 1666. The church's huge dome tower is 111 meters above the ground. Its dome has become a symbol of London throughout the world.



Saint Paul's was built on the site of an Anglo-Saxon church. Sir Christopher Wren (1632-1723) was commissioned to rebuilt Saint Paul's. He had great mathematical and engineering skill, and used the classical orders with great imagination. Wren is buried in the cathedral Crypt. His epitaph translated from Latin reads: "***If you seek his monument, look around you***".

Big Paul is in the northern bell tower at the front of Saint Paul's. It is the heaviest bell in the country. Big Paul rings every weekday at 1 p.m. to let people know that it is lunchtime.

Another bell, **Big Tom**, tolls when a monarch or important churchmen die.

The church bells in the other tower are rung on Sundays and to celebrate great occasions.

The Crypt extends under the whole building. Here you can see many memorials to famous people. Lord Nelson is buried here. There is a display of Cathedral treasures, including priest's robes.

The Dome of Saint Paul's is made of two domes, Outer and Inner, one inside the other. Inside there is a balcony called **the Whispering Gallery**. A whisper directed along the wall of one side of the dome can be heard on the other side. Inner dome is decorated with scenes from the life of Saint Paul.



The Choir has wooden stalls carved for Wren by Grinling Gibbons (1648-1721), master carver in wood to the Crown. A Master Carver works full-time restoring the carvings in the church. The saucer domes of the Choir are decorated with Victorian mosaics. They depict living things created by God: land animals, water creatures and birds.

Beyond the choir is the focal point of the whole Cathedral – the **High Altar**. It is a modern replacement of the altar which was damaged during World War II, and is an exact copy of Wren's original design.

Wren's cathedral originally had no monuments but now there are hundreds of them. The oldest is that of the poet John Donne, who was Dean of St. Paul's (1621-1631). In the north side of the Nave there is a huge monument to the **Duke of Wellington**¹. On the top the figure of the Duke sits on his favourite horse named Copenhagen. He is actually buried in the Crypt. The ornate funeral car in which his body was brought to the cathedral stands nearby. Also in the Crypt is the tomb of **Lord Nelson**². His coffin lies beneath a black marble sarcophagus.

The American Memorial Chapel is at the eastern end of Saint Paul's. It commemorates the Americans who died in the W.W.II. Their names are written in a roll of honour kept in a glass and gold case.

Notes:

¹**Duke of Wellington** – was an English soldier and politician. He was made a duke in 1814 as a reward for his victories against the French general Napoleon in the Peninsular War. The next year Wellington's army, with the Prussians, completely defeated Napoleon at the Battle of Waterloo. The duke then began an active political career and in 1828 became Prime Minister of Britain.

²**Lord Nelson** – was an English admiral who became famous for winning a number of sea battles against the French in the 1790s.

Canterbury

Canterbury is one of the oldest English towns with many fine old buildings, including the famous cathedral, the central church of the Church of England.

Canterbury is rightly regarded as the cradle of English Christianity – it was here that St Augustine made his first converts while on his mission to the pagan Anglo-Saxons, and where in 597 he became the first bishop.

The most notable building in the town is its **Cathedral**. Since the 7th century Canterbury Cathedral has been the mother of English churches; its Archbishop is the spiritual Head of the established Church of England.

Both town and the Cathedral suffered considerable devastation during the Danish raids (10-11th centuries), in the English Civil War and also during World War II. The story of **Thomas Becket (1118-70)** is linked to the city's history. He was a close friend of King Henry II who made him Chancellor (senior law official) and later Archbishop of Canterbury, hoping by doing this to be able to control the English Church. King Henry II decided that the Church had too much power. He made Thomas Becket Archbishop of Canterbury in 1162, thinking that his friend would help him to weaken the position of the Church. Although the King himself liked Thomas, he wasn't popular with other powerful men in England. They were jealous of his friendship with the King, and they also disliked him because he wasn't a nobleman. As Thomas wasn't even a priest, many people were very angry that he had been made Archbishop.

The King was amazed when Thomas began to defend the position of the Church against the him. After a while, Thomas had to leave England because relations between him and the King had become very bad, and Thomas was afraid that he might be killed. He lived in exile for five years until the King asked him to come back. The people, the bishops and the Pope were causing the King problems because they all wanted Thomas to continue as Archbishop of Canterbury.

When Thomas returned, in 1170, he brought authorization from the Pope to excommunicate the priests and noblemen who had acted against him. The King was furious when he learnt this. When Thomas resisted they quarreled. According to tradition,

Henry said, ‘Who will rid me of this turbulent priest?’ As a result in 1170 four of Henry’s knights entered Canterbury Cathedral and murdered Becket on the steps of the altar.

Three years later in 1173, the Pope canonized him and Becket was made a saint. His tomb became a place of thousands of pilgrims for three centuries. People traveled to show respect for the saint.

In the 16th century, when King Henry VIII separated from the Roman Catholic Church and established the Church of England, he said that Becket was no longer a saint and Thomas Becket’s tomb was destroyed.

It was said that miracles happened there, and many sick people went there in the hope of finding a cure.

The most famous modern ‘pilgrim’ was without doubt Pope John Paul II. His visit to Canterbury in 1982 was an important historical event because it showed the spirit of understanding that exists now between the Roman Catholic and the Anglican Churches.

The story of Becket provided several writers with inspiration (Tennyson, Elliot).

Fascinating in itself, the Cathedral also contains priceless treasures such as Europe’s oldest working clock, and one of four remaining copies of the **Magna Carta**¹, signed in 1215. There are many fine old buildings, including the famous cathedral which was made a “World Heritage site in 1988.

Notes:

¹**Magna Carta** – a document that King John was forced to sign by the English barons in 1215.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- dome – купол
- to commission – дать заказ, поручить
- crypt – склеп, подземная часовня
- epitaph – надгробная надпись
- to toll – ударять в колокол, звонить по покойнику
- to whisper – шептать
- choir – церковный хор; место хора в соборе
- to carve – вырезать (по дереву, кости); гравировать
- carving – резная работа

- saucer dome* – большой, круглый купол
- to depict* – изображать
- altar* – алтарь
- Nave* – (архитект.) неф, корабль (церкви)
- ornate* – богато украшенный
- tomb* – могила; гробница; могила с надгробием
- coffin* – гроб
- sarcophagus* – саркофаг
- roll* – каталог, список
- case* – застеклённый стенд; витрина (в музее)
- stained glass* – витражное стекло (цветное)
- mausoleum* – мавзолей
- cradle* – колыбель, источник
- to convert* – обращать в другую веру
- devastation* – разорение
- to be jealous of* – завидовать
- to exile* – изгонять, ссылать
- authorization* – санкция, разрешение
- to excommunicate* – отлучение от церкви
- to resist* – противостоять, сопротивляться
- to consecrate* – освящать
- nucleus* – центр, ядро
- canopy* – балдахин, навес

Practice the following for pronunciation: *York Minster, Durham, Canterbury, Salisbury Cathedral, Exeter Cathedral, Gloucester Cathedral, St Paul's Cathedral, Westminster Abbey, Elizabeth II, Christopher Wren, Whispering Gallery, Duke of Wellington, Thomas Becket, Lord Chancellor, Magna Carta.*

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a round roof with a circular base;*
- *a room under the floor of a church used especially in the past as a place for burying people;*
- *a group of people who sing together, especially in church services or public performances;*
- *a holy table in a church or temple;*
- *a large grave, especially one built of stone above or below the ground;*
- *a box in which a dead body is buried or cremated;*

- *special building made to hold the dead body of an important person or the dead bodies of a family;*
- *great destruction or damage, especially over a wide area;*
(altar, choir, coffin, crypt, dome, devastation, mausoleum, tomb)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions:

1. *Why are churches in Britain considered to be landmarks in every town and village?*
2. *How do cathedrals differ from churches? What are the most ancient cathedrals in Britain?*
3. *Where is the main residence of Archbishop of Anglican Church? Why?*
4. *What are the main features of the earliest stone churches of Anglo-Saxon and Norman periods?*
5. *How is the English Gothic style of the 13-15 centuries characterized?*
6. *What were the US earliest churches like, and how do they look like today?*
7. *Why is Westminster Abbey considered to be one of the most important religious centres in Britain?*
8. *What is the history of Westminster Abbey? Who was Edward the Confessor?*
9. *What did Henry III decide to do with the Norman Abbey?*
10. *How did William the Conqueror decide to use the Abbey?*
11. *Why is the Abbey compared with a mausoleum?*
12. *Why is the interior of the Abbey one of the finest achievements of English architecture?*
13. *What can we see in the museum of Abbey Treasures?*
14. *Is Westminster Abbey still a Christian Church with regular services?*
15. *Who built St Paul's Cathedral? Why is St Paul's Cathedral the most famous church in London?*
16. *What are the main bells of St Paul's Cathedral?*
17. *What is the main purpose of the Crypt?*
18. *What are the main features of the Dome, the Choir and the High Altar?*
19. *Are there any monuments in St Paul's Cathedral?*
20. *Whom does the American Memorial Chapel commemorate?*
21. *Why is Canterbury regarded as the cradle of English Christianity? What is the most notable building in the town?*
22. *Who was Thomas Becket? How is his name connected with the history of Canterbury?*
23. *What are the histories of Salisbury and Gloucester Cathedrals?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

- 1. В Британии звон церковных колоколов из колокольни можно услышать в связи с воскресным утром и со свадьбами.*
- 2. В церквях Великобритании обычно от 5 до 12 колоколов, в которые звонят целые команды звонарей.*
- 3. Самым знаменитым колоколом в Британии является Биг Бен – огромный колокол на часовой башне, являющейся частью зданий Парламента в Лондоне, который отбивает часы, и его звон слышен по радио и телевидению.*
- 4. Кафедральный собор – это, как правило, большая церковь, обычно построенная в форме длинного креста с башней в центре.*
- 5. В часовне Св. Эдварда похоронены девять английских королей и королев, включая Генриха 5.*
- 6. Обладая великим математическим и инженерным даром, К. Рен использовал классические правила с богатым воображением.*
- 7. Кентерберийский Кафедральный собор хранит бесценные сокровища, такие, как: самые старинные часы в Европе, которые до сих пор работают; одна из четырёх копий Магна Карты, подписанной в 1215 году.*

PUBLIC HEALTH

The National Health Service

The National Health Service (**NHS**) is a very emotive subject for the British. It looks after them “from the cradle to the grave”. The NHS is generally regarded as the jewel in the crown of the welfare state. British people have strong feelings about its importance, and it is always one of the top political issues in Britain.

As an alternative to the NHS you can use the private healthcare system. Many people now take out private health insurance, or receive health insurance as a benefit of their employment. If you use private healthcare, you will probably be able to get an appointment to see a specialist much more quickly than with the NHS.

The NHS is very typically British. This is in its avoidance of bureaucracy. The system, from the public's point of view, is beautifully simple. The British system is special in a number of ways. Its most distinctive feature is that it is universal, and free at the point of use: everybody can use it, and they do not have to pay when they use it. Unlike most systems in other countries, it is funded from general taxation, rather than being an insurance scheme.

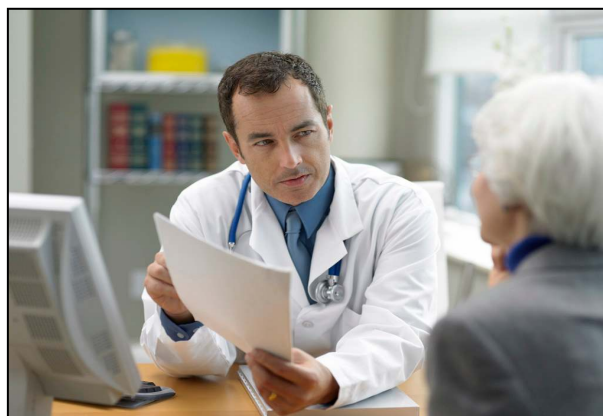


The NHS provides a full range of medical services which are available to all residents, regardless of their income. Local authority personal social services and voluntary organizations provide help and advice to the most vulnerable members of the community. These include elderly, physically disabled and mentally ill people, and children in need of care.

Spending on the health service has increased and is planned to grow further over the next years. More patients are being treated than ever before.

The medical profession

Doctors generally have the same very high status in Britain that they have throughout the world. Most doctors in the country are **General Practitioners (GPs)** and they are in the heart of the system. When you are ill in Britain, you normally go to your GP in a small surgery near your home. A visit to the GP is the first step towards getting any kind of treatment. You are registered with that practice, or team of doctors, and they keep your medical records. Each GP has about 2,000 people on the books. If you suffer from a lot of illness (or are a hypochondriac) your own doctor will know you personally. If you need specialist care from, for example, a dermatologist, an ophthalmologist or an obstetrician, the GP will refer you to a hospital. All specialists work in hospitals, and you cannot see them without a letter from your GP.



The advantage of this arrangement is that the specialist's time is not wasted by inappropriate inquiries, as the GP acts as a sort of gate keeper. Also the patient does not have to make difficult decisions about which specialist to go to. GPs are able to deal with the great majority of problems themselves; if you have a cold, you do not need an ear-nose-and-throat specialist to tell you to go home and keep warm. And GPs are more likely to take a holistic approach, having knowledge of the patient's character and lifestyle.

In fact, though, Britain's health system can already claim cost-efficiency. The country spends less money per person on health care than any other country in the western world. One possible reason for this is the way that GPs are paid. The money which they get from the government doesn't depend on the number of consultations they perform. Instead, it depends on the number of registered patients they have. Therefore, they have no incentive to arrange more consultations than are necessary.

Specialist doctors have greater prestige than ordinary GPs. These specialists are



allowed to work part-time for the NHS and spend the rest of their time earning big fees from private patients. Some have a surgery in Harley Street in London, the sign that a doctor is one of the best. However, the difference in status between specialists and ordinary GPs is not as marked as it

is in most other countries. At medical school, it is not automatically assumed that a brilliant student will become a specialist. GPs are not in any way regarded as a second-class. The idea of the family doctor with personal knowledge of the circumstances of his or her patients was established in the days when only rich people could afford to pay for the services of a doctor.

The status of **nurses** in Britain may be traced to their origins in the 19th century when nurses became national heroines during the Crimean War in the 1850s. Nurses have an almost saintly image in the minds of the British public. But the nursing profession has always been rather badly paid and there is a very high turnover of nursing staff. Most

nurses, the vast majority of whom are still women, give up their jobs after only a few years.

Health problems

Two statistics stand out in comparisons between Britain and other European countries. Heart disease and cancers, in particular breast cancer, seem to be bigger killers here than elsewhere. What could be the reasons? In the case of breast cancer there is one clear factor – there is less screening and fewer regular checks. Heart problems are made worse by various aspects of lifestyle: diet, lack of exercise, stress, smoking and drinking. Of course, the British are famous for getting drunk, especially on holiday or after football matches, but the statistics do not support this negative image, and in reality, the British drink less alcohol per person than in any European country except Sweden and Finland.

About 28 per cent of the adult population smokes and that is very close to the European average. So perhaps diet is the key: it is often said that the British eat too much unhealthy food like sugar and animal fat, especially compared to the healthy Mediterranean diet. This argument is supported by comparative statistics within the UK, which show more heart disease in the north of England and in Scotland than in the south-east: Northerners and Scots eat more sausages, chips and chocolate.

Another remarkable fact emerges from the statistics: in spite of more than half a century of socialist-style medicine, health differences between the social classes are as great as ever. Almost every health indicator tells the same story – you are much more likely to die early from disease if you are working class. A poor unemployed woman is a staggering seven times more likely to die of cervical cancer than a well-paid professional woman.

One common measure of public health is the infant mortality rate; that is, how many babies die within their first year. Amazingly, this rate still shows huge differences between the social classes in Britain.

There are all sorts of explanations for these class-based differences. Again, one obvious factor is lifestyle: working-class people smoke much more, and their diet is unhealthier. It also seems that doctors pay more attention to richer people, and take their

illnesses more seriously. But there are real problems in interpreting the statistics; for example, if your health is bad, you are more likely to become unemployed, and so you will go down the class ladder. In this case, class status is the result of illness, not one of its causes.

Social protection

What happens when people lose their jobs, or retire, or do not make enough money to support themselves and their families? There are welfare **benefits**. It is simple to administer, and it gives people peace of mind – they do not have to worry about money when they are sick. Any adult who cannot find paid work, or any family whose total income is not enough for its basic needs, is entitled to financial help. This help comes in various ways and is usually paid by the **Department of Social Security**.

Anyone below the retirement age of sixty-five who has previously worked for a certain minimum period of time can receive unemployment benefit. This is organized by the **Department of Employment**.

All retired people are entitled to the standard old-age pension, provided that they have paid their national insurance contributions for most of their working lives. After a certain age, even people who are still earning can receive their pension (though at a slightly reduced rate).

The government pension, however, is not very high (at around £100 per week). Many people therefore make arrangements during their working lives to have some additional form of income after they retire.

Some people are entitled to neither pension nor unemployment benefit because they have not previously worked for long enough or because they have been unemployed for a long time. These people can apply for income support. If they have no significant savings, they will receive it.

A wide range of other benefits exist. For example, child benefit is a small weekly payment for each child, usually paid direct to mothers. Other examples are housing benefit (to help with rent payments), sickness benefit, maternity benefit and death grants (to cover funeral expenses).

Homelessness has increased dramatically in recent years. A visitor to London today cannot help seeing people lying in the street in sleeping bags or wrapped in newspapers. It is estimated that there are more than 100,000 homeless people in the capital city, and of course many more across Britain.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- cradle – колыбель
- grave – могила
- welfare – благосостояние
- Welfare State – Государственное всеобщее благосостояние
- issue – предмет спора, проблема
- benefit – пособие
- charge – цена, налог
- to assume – предполагать
- reduction – снижение
- measles – корь
- tuberculosis – туберкулёз
- rubella – краснуха
- hip – бедро
- bureaucrasy – бюрократия
- income – доход; заработок
- vulnerable – уязвимый
- General Practitioner – врач общей практики
- surgery – приёмная врача
- hypochondriac – ипохондрик
- dermatologist – дерматолог
- ophthalmologist – офтальмолог
- obstetrician – акушер
- holistic approach – целостный подход
- incentive – стимул, побуждение
- heart disease – сердечное заболевание
- cancer – рак (онкологическое заболевание)
- breast – грудная клетка
- screening – проверка; диагностирование
- staggering – шатание; колебание
- infant mortality – детская смертность
- Department of Social Security – Министерство Соц. Безопасности
- to be entitled to smth. – иметь право на что-либо
- maternity – материнство

- to estimate – подсчитать приблизительно, прикинуть
- famine relief – помощь голодающим
- to rattle – трещать, грохотать, барабанить
- in despair – в безвыходном положении
- to commit suicide – покончить жизнь самоубийством
- desperate – доведённый до отчаяния, безнадёжный
- orphan – сирота
- to supplement – пополнять

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Aneurin Bevan, General Practitioners, the Crimean War, European, Sweden, Finland, Mediterranean, Department of Social Security, Department of Employment, the Big Issue, Imperial Cancer Research, 'the Terence Higgins Trust', 'the Samaritans'.

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a person who has been trained in medical science, whose job is to treat people who are ill or injured;
- a person who is receiving medical treatment, especially in a hospital;
- the condition of a person's body or mind;
- a doctor who studies and treats skin diseases;
- money provided by the government to people who need financial help because they are unemployed;
- a sudden serious medical condition in which the heart stops working normally, sometimes causing death;
- a serious disease in which growths of cells form in the body and kill normal body cells;
- a person whose job is to take care of sick or injured people, usually in a hospital;
- an amount of money paid regularly by a government or company to somebody who is considered to be too old or too ill to work;
- the branch of medicine concerned with the birth of children;
- a doctor who is trained to perform medical operations in a hospital;
- an organization for helping people in need;
- an infectious disease, especially of children, that causes fever and small red spots that cover the whole body;
- a doctor who studies and treats the diseases of the eye;
- a serious infectious disease in which swellings appear on the lungs and other parts of the body;

(health, benefit, measles, heart attack, tuberculosis, doctor, nurse, surgeon, dermatologist, ophthalmologist, obstetrics, cancer, charity, pension, patient)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions:

- 1. Why is the National Health Service important for British people? Why is it always one of the top political issues in Britain?*
- 2. Do British people have an alternative to the NHS?*
- 3. Why is the NHS very typically British?*
- 4. What is the status of British doctors?*
- 5. What is the difference between GPs and specialist doctors? What are the main problems?*
- 6. What is the status of nurses in Britain?*
- 7. What are the main health problems in Britain?*
- 8. How does the system of welfare benefits work in Britain? Who is responsible for social protection?*
- 9. What is a striking feature of life in Britain? What are the biggest charity organizations?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English

- 1. Злоупотребление наркотиками, употребление их ради удовольствия – всеобщая проблема как в Британии, так и в Америке, особенно среди молодых людей. Хотя употребление наркотиков в обеих странах незаконно.*
- 2. Гиппократ – один из основоположников научного подхода к болезням человека и их лечению.*
- 3. Зигмунд Фрейд, основатель психоанализа, оставил неизгладимый отпечаток на лице западного мира. Он изменил представление человека о самом себе.*
- 4. Велика заслуга Н. Пирогова в разработке вопросов обезболивания. В 1847 году, через год после открытия эфирного наркоза американским врачом У. Мортоном, он опубликовал очень важное экспериментальное исследование, посвящённое изучению влияния эфира на организм.*
- 5. Чезаре Ломброзо, итальянский врач-психиатр и антрополог, разработал учение о прирождённом преступнике. Он выдвинул концепцию, что существуют люди с врождёнными качествами к совершению преступлений.*
- 6. В поисках общего у помешанных и гениальных Ломброзо пытался доказать, что безумство порой приводит к гениальным творениям. Он писал: «Между*

помешанным во время припадка и гениальным человеком, обдумывающим и создающим своё произведение, существует полнейшее сходство».

7. Н. Склифосовский родился в 1836 г. на хуторе близ города Дубоссары, Тираспольского уезда. Ему было сорок, а его имя ставили рядом с именем Н. Пирогова. Н. Склифосовский разработал многие вопросы хирургического лечения различных заболеваний: рака языка и челюстей, желудка, желчного пузыря и т.д.

8. Британская королева может похвастать отменным здоровьем: за всю долгую жизнь её донимал лишь синусит (воспаление слизистой оболочки околоносовых пазух), который она лечила с помощью гомеопатии. В последние годы стала прибегать к помощи змеиного яда, чтобы избежать варикозного расширения вен.

SPORTS AND COMPETITION

A national passion

Sport probably plays a more important part in people's lives in Britain than it does in most other countries. The British are great lovers of competitive sports; and when they are neither playing nor watching games they like to talk about them, or when they cannot do that, to think about them. Almost everybody is actively engaged in this or that kind of sports. For a very large number sport is their main form of entertainment. Millions take part in some kind of sport at least once a week. Many millions more are regular spectators and follow one or more sports. There are hours of televised sport each week. Every newspaper devotes several pages entirely to sport.

Modern sport in Britain is very different. **“Winning isn't everything” and “It's only a game”** are still well-known sayings which reflect the amateur approach of the past. But to modern professionals, sport is clearly not just a game. These days, top players in any sport talk about having a ‘professional attitude’ and doing their ‘job’ well, even if, officially, their sport is still an amateur one.

Among the most popular sports are **football, cricket, boat racing and horseracing**. It's rather extraordinary how many of today's international games originated in Britain – **football, rugby, tennis, boxing, rowing and horse racing** among them. Of course, the Romans had boxing matches between gladiators in their circuses, horse racing was popular with the Greeks and Arabs long before the British got hold of the idea: and

people have been playing football in one form or another for thousands of years, all over the world. But the contribution of the British was to take these games or sports and formalize them in various ways.

“Some people think football is a matter of life and death; I can assure them that it’s much more important than that” – Bill Shankly, Liverpool manager.

Cricket

The game particularly associated with England is **cricket**. Many other games which are English in origin have been adopted with enthusiasm all over the world, but cricket has been seriously and extensively adopted only in the former British Empire.

Judging by the numbers of people who play it and watch it, cricket is definitely not the national sport of Britain. In Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland, interest in it is largely confined to the middle classes. Only in England and a small part of Wales it is played a top level. But even in England the majority of the population don’t understand its rules. More over, it is rare for the English national team to be the best in the world.

Cricket is much more than just a sport; it symbolizes a way of life – a slow and peaceful rural way of life. Cricket is associated with long sunny summer afternoons, the smell of new-mown grass and the sound of leather (ball) connecting with willow (the wood from which cricket bats are made). Nearly every village, except in the far north, has its cricket club.

You can watch cricket all day on TV. News programmes keep you up-to-date with the score. Men, when they meet, exchange a few words about the state of the game.

One reason that cricket becomes so much a part of life is that the games are so long. The big international games, known as test matches, are up to five days long.

Football

Football is a very popular sport in Britain, played between August and May. In the USA and sometimes in Britain it is called ‘**soccer**’. This distinguishes it from other kinds such as rugby football, Gaelic football, Australian football etc. Everywhere in the country except south Wales, it is easily the most popular spectator sport, the most played sport in the country’s state schools and one of the most popular participatory sports for adults. Football not cricket can be called the national sport.

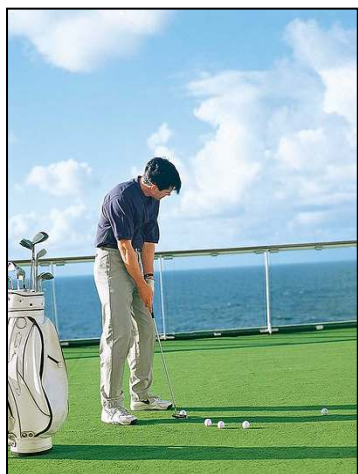


For the greatest mass of the British public the eight months of the football season are more important than the four months of cricket. Professional football is controlled by **the Football Association** (the FA). A very important competition is the **FA Cup**. The two teams which are the winners of the FA Cup competition, play in the FA Cup Final at Wembley Stadium in London. This is a very important national sporting event, and it is also watched by millions of people on TV.

A sort of football was very popular in England in the Middle Ages, especially as a contest between neighbouring villages. But at that time there were very few rules. As it was played in English schools, the game became progressively more standardized and rule-governed, and by the middle of the 19th century it had become very much the game that we know today; the first actual set of rules was written by Cambridge University.

Rugby and Golf

Rugby football (or ‘rugger’) is played with an egg-shaped ball, which may be carried and thrown. Each team has 15 players, who spend a lot of time lying in the mud or on top of each other and become very dirty.



Golf courses are popular meeting places of the business community; it is, for example, very desirable for bank managers to play golf. There are plenty of tennis clubs, but most towns provide tennis courts in public parks.

Golf was first developed in Scotland in the 15th century but is now played all round the world by both professional and amateur players.

Golf began as a sport of the upper classes and in Britain it continues to attract mainly people in business and the professions. The game is quite expensive to play and membership of the most popular golf clubs may cost a lot of money. The most famous British clubs include ‘*the Royal and Ancient*’ at **St Andrews**, where the first official rules of golf were agreed in 1754, ‘*Muirfield*’¹ and ‘*Wentworth*’².

Notes

¹**Muirfield** – is a golf course on the east coast of Scotland near Edinburgh.

²**Wentworth** – is a famous golf course in southern England. A number of important competitions are held there, including the World Match Play Championship, which has taken place there every year since it began in 1964.

Rowing

Rowing has a great history in Britain, beginning in some schools and universities. Some regattas on the Thames have been spectacular social events for well over a hundred



years, and today's best rowers have had international successes. **The Boat Race** is held at the beginning of April between teams of Oxford University and Cambridge University. It is a popular national event and is shown on

TV.

The Henley Regatta is a meeting for races between rowing boats at Henley, a town on the Thames. It is an important social event for upper-class and fashionable people.

Animals in sport

Apart from being hunted, another way in which animals are used in sport is when they race. **Horse-racing** is a long-established and popular sport in Britain. It became known as 'the sport of kings' in the 17th century.

Following the Norman invasion of 1066 there was little resistance and Britain was comparatively peaceful. As a result people have had the time to develop sports. The Normans sent armies off to fight the Saracens in **the Crusades**¹, who came back with very fast, light Arab horses, quite unlike their own big, heavy animals. From this lucky chance a passion for horse racing developed in England which has survived until this day.

Notes

***the Crusades** – is a series of military expeditions between the 11th and 14th centuries, in which armies from the Christian countries of Europe tried to get back the Holy Land (the area that is now Israel, Palestine, Jordan and Egypt) from the Muslims.*

Modern British Royalty has close connections with sport involving horses. Some members of the Royal family own racehorses and attend certain annual race meetings; some are also active participants in the sports of polo and show-jumping (both of which involve riding a horse).

In the history of sport in general, horse racing was extremely important. From an early date, a major part of the pleasure of a day at the races was betting. Of course, when money is involved, things get serious. So racing was carefully regulated: the length of the race was standardized, and there were strict rules about the behaviour of riders.

Horse-racing is a big business today too. **The Derby** is a very important annual horse race held at **Epsom** in England in May or June, on a day which is known as *Derby Day*.

The Royal Ascot is a four-day horse-racing event held at Ascot, a suburb of London, every June. It's one of the most important race meetings in Britain. It's especially popular with upper-class people. Members of the Royal family always attend it. One of the days is called '*Ladies Day*', and some of the women like to wear very big and unusually looking hats.

Greyhound racing, although declining, is still popular. In this sport, the dogs chase a mechanical hare round a racetrack. It's easier to organize than horse-racing and 'the dogs' has the reputation of being the 'poor man's racing'.



GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to adopt – принимать; заимствовать
- tee – мишень; метка для мяча в гольфе
- hazard – препятствие, помеха
- bunker – неровность; яма
- rough – неровное поле
- fairway – проход
- betting – ставка (в пари)
- trout – форель
- salmon – лосось; сёмга
- lacrosse - лакросс
- bowl – игра в шары; кегли
- squash – игра в мяч (вроде тенниса)

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: St Andrews, Middle Ages, Muirfield, Wentworth, London Marathon, the Henley Regatta, Derby.

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- activity that you do for pleasure and that needs physical effort or skill, usually done in a special area and according to fixed rules;
- a room or hall with equipment for doing physical exercise;
- a situation in which people or organizations compete with each other for smth. that not everyone can have;
- a game played by two teams of 11 players, using a round ball which players kick up and down the playing field;
- a large sports ground surrounded by rows of seats and usually other buildings;
- a sport in which two people fight each other with their hands, while wearing very large thick gloves;
- a long running race of about 42 km.;
- the state of being physically healthy and strong;
- a game played on grass by two teams of 11 players. Players score points by hitting the ball with a wooden bat;
- a game played over a large area of ground using specially shaped sticks to hit a small hard ball into a series of 9 or 18 holes;

- *the sport or business catching fish;*
 - *a sport in which horses with riders race against each other;*
 - *the activity of running slowly and steadily as a form of exercise;*
 - *a game played by two teams of 13 or 15 players, using an oval ball which may be kicked or carried;*
 - *a game in which two or four players use rackets to hit a ball backwards and forwards across a net on a specially marked court;*
- (football, cricket, horseracing, rugby, sport, tennis, boxing, competition, stadium, golf, jogging, marathon, fishing, fitness, gym)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions:

- 1. What are the most popular sports in Britain?*
- 2. What is cricket for British people?*
- 3. How did football become so popular game in Britain?*
- 4. Who plays golf in Britain?*
- 5. Do the British like animals in sport? What is the history of horse-racing? Is it popular in Britain?*
- 6. Why does rowing have a great history in Britain?*
- 7. What new games are common and popular in Britain today? What kinds of sport are not so popular?*
- 8. Are the British fond of sport or fitness today?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

- 1. Такие виды спорта, как: охота, стрельба (охота) и рыбная ловля в Британии часто называют «кровавый спорт», так как он предполагает убийство животных. Все эти три вида спорта традиционно ассоциировались с аристократией.*
- 2. Иностранному журналисту, работающему в Лондоне, должен знать термины и эпитеты, принятые при описании крикетных матчей, так же хорошо, как популярные библейские выражения или латинские пословицы.*
- 3. Согласно легенде, первым игроком в гольф был шотландский пастух Эндрю, который забавлялся тем, что пастушеским посохом загонял булыжники в кроличьи норы.*
- 4. Больше всего на свете Елизавета II любит лошадей. Посещение лошадиных скачек в Эпсоме и Аскоте стало королевской обязанностью ещё с 1911 года.*

5. Хороший игрок в составе школьной команды обретает, по мнению англичан, задатки руководителя и общественного деятеля.
6. Неделя королевских скачек в Эскоте знаменует начало летнего светского сезона ещё с тех пор, как королева Анна в 1711 году повелела соорудить ипподром близ Виндзорского замка.
7. Королевские скачки – это повод появиться на ярмарке тщеславия при полном параде, чтобы ощутить собственную причастность к «сливкам общества».
8. Чтобы попасть на ипподром в дни королевских скачек, нужно иметь деньги. Чтобы получить билет на привилегированную часть трибун, внутри которой расположена «королевская ложа», нужно заранее подать во дворец письменную просьбу о персональном приглашении (это стоит больше 1000 фунтов).
9. Королевских скачек в Эскоте нельзя представить себе без серых цилиндров, экзотических шляпок и, конечно же, клубники со сливками.
10. Дэвид Бэкхем не просто звезда футбольного клуба «Манчестер», он – настоящая звезда: красавец, чемпион и спортсмен, супруг поп-звезды и прекрасный отец.

Lesson 7

COUNTRY AND PEOPLE

TRADITIONS AND SOCIAL LIFE OF THE BRITISH PEOPLE

Public Holidays

Britain is a country governed by routine. It has fewer public holidays than any other country in Europe and fewer than North America.

There are eight public holidays, or '**Bank holidays**' a year in Great Britain, that is days on which people needn't go to work (on days other than Saturday or Sunday). All banks and post offices are closed, as well as most factories and offices and some shops.

These holidays are: **New Year's Day**, **Good Friday**, **Easter Monday**, **May Day**, **Spring Bank Holiday** (last Monday in May), **August Bank Holiday** (last Monday in August), **Christmas Day**, **Boxing Day** (December 26th).

The Scots don't usually celebrate Good Friday or Boxing Day. In winter they concentrate instead on Hogmanay, their version of New Year's Eve and New Year's Day, which is even more of a festive occasion than Christmas. Their bank holidays can also be more variable than south of the border, with Spring and Autumn Holidays replacing some of the fixed date bank holidays in England. Scotland has also a number of its own festivals, celebrating the birthday of their national poet with Burns suppers on January 25th, and their national saint on St Andrew's Day, November 30th.

Northern Ireland has several additional festivals of its own, namely, St Patrick's Day in Catholic communities (March 17th) and Orange Day, in Protestant communities (July 12th).

Most of these holidays are of religious origin, though for the greater part of the population they have long lost their religious significance and are simply days on which people relax, eat, drink and make merry.

Christmas and New Year



Christmas is the main public holiday in Britain, when people spend time at home with their families, eat special food and drink a lot. Christmas is a Christian festival to remember the birth of Jesus Christ.

Long before Christmas time shops become very busy, because a lot of people buy Christmas presents. People also buy Christmas cards to send to their friends and relatives. Family members wrap up their gifts and leave them at the bottom of the Christmas tree to be found on Christmas morning. Children leave a long sock or stocking at the end of their bed on Christmas Eve, hoping that Father Christmas will come down the chimney during the night and bring them small presents, fruits and nuts.

In churches people sing Christmas carols – special religious songs. Sometimes groups of people walk about the streets and sing carols at the doors of houses. Houses are usually decorated with lights and branches of needle-leaf trees.

On Christmas Eve (the 24th of December) some people go to a special church service called *Midnight Mass* which starts at 12 o'clock at night.

Other activities on Christmas Day may include the eating of *Christmas dinner* and listening to the Queen's Christmas message. This ten-minute television broadcast is normally the only time in the year when the monarch speaks directly to 'her' people on television.

For many families, Christmas is the only time that they are all together. The typical Christmas dinner consists of *stuffed roast turkey* with potatoes and other vegetables (often Brussel sprouts), followed by a *Christmas pudding*, an extremely heavy sweet dish made of dried fruits. It's traditional to pour brandy over it and then set it alight. Other traditional foods include a



special Christmas cake, a heavy fruit cake, with hard white icing on top, and *mince pies* – small round cakes filled with a mixture of apples, raisins and spices.

The day after Christmas, the 26th of December, is also a public holiday. It's called **Boxing Day**. The name goes back to the old tradition: some time before Christmas, boxes were placed in churches for the people to put some money or presents for the poor. On the day after Christmas the priest opened the box and gave the contents away to poor people.

Parties on New Year's Eve are usually for friends. In London many go to the traditional celebration in Trafalgar Square, where there is an enormous Christmas Tree.

New Year is not such an important holiday in England as Christmas. Some people don't celebrate it at all.

Many people have New Year parties. At midnight they listen to the chimes of Big Ben, drink a toast to the New Year.

Easter

Easter is a Christian holiday in March or April, when Christians remember the death of Christ and his return to life. The holiday is marked by going to church and then having a celebration dinner. The most popular emblem of Easter is *the Easter egg*.

Each year, on Easter Sunday, London greets spring with a traditional spectacular **Easter Parade** in Battersea Park. The Parade is a great procession of many richly decorated floats on which actors and amateurs perform shows. The most beautifully decorated float moves at the back of the procession and carries the *Easter Princess* and her attendants.

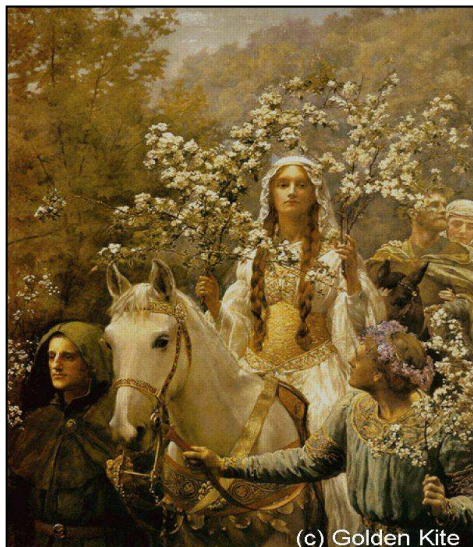
On Good Friday bakers sell hot cross buns. On Easter Monday many people travel to the seaside or go and watch one of the many sporting events as football or horseracing.

Egg-rolling is a traditional Easter pastime which still flourishes in Northern England, Scotland, Northern Ireland, the Isle of Man, and Switzerland. It takes place on Easter Sunday or Monday, and consists of rolling coloured, hard-boiled eggs down a slope



until they are cracked and broken after which they are eaten by their owners. In some districts, this is a competitive game, the winner being a player whose egg remains longest undamaged.

May Day



The May Spring Festival, which is celebrated on the 1st of May, is celebrated mostly by children and young people in different parts of Britain. It's celebrated with garlands of flowers, dancing and games on the village green, where they erect a **maypole** – a tall pole decorated with flowers and ribbons. The girls put on their best summer dresses, put flowers in their hair and round their waists, and wait for the crowning of *the May Queen*. The most beautiful girl is crowned with a garland of flowers.

Spring Bank Holiday and August Bank Holiday

Spring Bank Holiday is celebrated on the last Monday in May. All the offices are closed and people don't go to work. Many people go to the country on this day and have picnics.

August Bank Holiday is celebrated on the last Monday in August. Townsfolk usually go to the country and to the seacoast. Seaside towns near London are invaded by thousands of Londoners, who come in cars and trains, on motor-cycles and bicycles.

The August Bank Holiday is also a time for big sports meetings at large stadiums, mainly all kinds of athletics. Traditional on this day is the famous Henley regatta.

Other notable annual occasions

Besides public holidays, there are other festivals, anniversaries and simply days, on which certain traditions are observed.

St Valentine's Day



St Valentine is considered a friend and patron of lovers. For centuries St Valentine's Day, February 14th, has been a day for choosing sweethearts and exchanging Valentine cards. At first a Valentine card was hand-made, with little paintings of hearts and flowers, and a short verse composed by the sender.

The tradition of sending Valentine cards is widespread all over the country. People sending Valentine cards don't usually sign their name. Despite the unromantic reputation of the British, on this day every year about £7 million flowers are delivered, £40 million chocolates are sold and greetings-card manufacturers collect £25 million.

Pancake Day



Pancake Day is a popular name for **Shrove Tuesday** – the last day of enjoyment before the fasting of **Lent**. Lent was a time of fasting. Both meat and eggs were forbidden throughout the six weeks. On Shrove Tuesday Christians confessed their sins to a priest. Many people still traditionally eat pancakes on that day. Traditionally, this was the last day when people could enjoy rich food before

Lent.

One of the main events of Shrove Tuesday is the pancake race at Olney in Buckinghamshire. The competitors in the race are housewives from Olney; they have to make their pancakes and run from the village square to the church. People have to carry pancakes in frying pans and repeatedly toss them (throw them into the air so that they land the other way up in the pan) as they run. Anyone who drops his or her pancake is disqualified.

The fourth Sunday in Lent is **Mothering Sunday** – a day of small family reunions. On this day absent sons and daughters return to their homes and gifts are made to mothers by their children of all ages.

Remembrance Day

Remembrance Day is observed throughout Britain in commemoration of the million British soldiers, sailors and airmen who lost their lives during the two World Wars. On that day special services are held in the churches and wreaths are laid at war memorials throughout the country. The largest ceremony is held in London, where politicians, Commonwealth figures and members of the Royal family lay flowers at the Cenotaph in



Whitehall, where great number of people gather to observe the two-minute silence. Then comes the march past the memorial of ex-servicemen and women, followed by an endless line of ordinary citizens who have come here with their personal wreaths.

People traditionally wear paper or plastic poppy, a symbol of mourning, on Remembrance Sunday, and the day is also called '**Poppy Day**'. Artificial poppies are traditionally sold in the streets everywhere, and the money collected in this way is later used to help the men who had been crippled during the war and their dependants.

Halloween

Halloween means 'holy evening' and takes place on October 31st. Although it is a much more important festival in the USA than in Britain, it's celebrated by many people in the United Kingdom. It's particularly connected with witches and ghosts.



Halloween customs date back to a time when people believed in devils, witches and ghosts. They thought that they could do all kinds of damage to property. Some people tried to ward off witches by painting magic signs or nailing a horseshoe.

Today the day is usually marked by costume balls or fancy-dress parties and is a popular tradition with young people and

children. They cut horrible faces in pumpkins, potatoes and put a candle inside, which shines through their eyes. This is made to scare their friends. People play different games such as trying to eat an apple from a bucket of water without using their hands.

In recent years children dressed in white sheets knock on doors at Halloween and ask if you would like a 'trick' or 'treat'. If you give them something nice, a 'treat' (usually money or sweets), they go away. However, if you don't, they play a 'trick' on you, such as making a lot of noise or spilling flour on your front doorstep.

Guy Fawkes Night

Guy Fawkes Night is one of the most popular festivals in Britain. It commemorates the discovery of the so-called **Gunpowder Plot**, and is widely celebrated all over the country.

The story goes that at the beginning of the 17th century there was a plot to destroy the Houses of Parliament and kill King James I during the ceremony of opening Parliament on November 5, 1605. The plot was organized by a group of Roman Catholics. As a Protestant, king James I was very unpopular with Roman Catholics. In 1604 the conspirators dug a tunnel to a vault below the House of Lords and put into the vault 36 barrels of gunpowder. The plot was discovered, and on the 4th of November a search was made of the parliament vaults, and the gunpowder was found, together with Guy Fawkes who was to set off the explosion. Guy Fawkes was hanged and his fellow-conspirators were killed.



The historical meaning of the event is no longer important, but this day is traditionally celebrated with fireworks and a bonfire, on which the figure of a man called Guy is burnt.

November is a day on which children are allowed to let off fireworks, to make a bonfire and to burn on it a guy made of old clothes, straw and one of father's old hats. On the days before November 5, one may see groups of children going about the streets with their faces blackened and wearing some fancy clothes. They ask the passers-by to give them *a penny for the guy*. With this money they buy fireworks for the festival.

On 'Guy Fawkes Night' itself there are 'bonfire parties' throughout the country. Some people cook food in the embers of the bonfire, especially chestnuts or potatoes. So many fireworks are set off, that by the end of the evening, the air in all British cities smells strongly of sulphur. Every year, accidents with fireworks injure or even kill several people.

At the time, the failure of the gunpowder plot was celebrated as a victory for British Protestantism over rebel Catholicism. However, it has now lost its religious and patriotic connotations. In most parts of Britain, Catholic children celebrate it just as enthusiastically as Protestant children.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- beach resort – курорт
- boarding house – пансион, меблированные комнаты со столом
- pier – пирс, причал, волнолом
- holidaymaker – отпускник, отдыхающий, турист
- promenade – прогулка, место для прогулок
- sea breeze – морской лёгкий ветерок
- deckchair – шезлонг
- arcade – пассаж (ярусный торговый центр с переходами, перекрытыми стеклянными крышами)
- bingo – игра, в которой обычно разыгрываются призы
- studious – любящий науку
- fossil – ископаемое (остатки животных или растительных организмов)
- package holiday – турпутёвка, включающая проезд, проживание, питание, экскурсии
- festive – весёлый, праздничный
- needle-leaf tree – иглолистный
- Brussel sprout – брюссельская капуста
- chime – звон курантов
- egg-rolling – перекатывание яиц
- garland – гирлянда
- pancake – блин, оладья
- Lent – Великий пост
- to confess the sins – исповедоваться
- reunion – воссоединение, встреча после разлуки
- wreath – венок
- Cenotaph – кенотаф, памятник неизвестному солдату
- poppy – мак
- to ward off – держать на расстоянии

-pumpkin – тыква
-vault – подвал, погреб
-barrel of gunpowder – бочка с порохом
-bonfire – костёр
-ember – горячая зола
-rebel – восставший, мятежник

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Lyme, Brighton, Scarborough, Alicante, Ibiza, Palma de Majorca, Easter, Christmas, Guy Fawkes, Protestantism, Catholicism.

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

1. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a large rounded orange-yellow fruit with a thick rind, the flesh of which can be used in sweet or savoury dishes;*
 - *a place by the sea, especially a beach area or holiday resort;*
 - *the period from Friday evening through Sunday evening, esp. regarded as a time for leisure;*
 - *a bell or a metal bar or tube, tuned and used in a set to produce a melodious series of ringing sounds when struck;*
 - *a pebbly or sandy shore, especially by the sea between high- and low-water marks;*
 - *a thin, flat thing of batter, fried on both sides in a pan and typically rolled up with a sweet or savoury filling;*
 - *a folding chair of wood and canvas, typically used by the sea or on the deck of passenger ships;*
 - *in a seaside town, it is the road by the sea where people go for a walk;*
 - *a person who takes part in a conspiracy;*
 - *a sporting event consisting of a series of boat or yacht races;*
 - *a plant with a large, delicate flower, usually red in colour. The drug opium is obtained from one type of it;*
 - *the spirit of a dead person that someone believes they can see or feel;*
- (seaside, beach, promenade, deckchair, weekend, regatta, pancake, poppy, ghost, pumpkin, conspirator, chime)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. Where do the British people usually spend their holidays?*
- 2. Why did British people like to go to the seaside or to the beach? How can they have a rest?*
- 3. What are the main resorts in Britain?*
- 4. How do the British people spend their weekends?*
- 5. Why are some holidays called public?*
- 6. How do the British people celebrate Christmas and New Year?*
- 7. What are the main interesting features of Easter and May Day in Britain?*
- 8. What did you know about other festivals, anniversaries on which certain traditions are observed?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English, using the words and phrases from the texts.

- 1. Когда вы приезжаете в Англию, необходимо быть очень аккуратным. Англия всегда славилась своими жуликами, среди которых особенной виртуозностью отличались карманники.*
- 2. К русским отношение у англичан в целом доброжелательное. Но типичная реакция на русских туристов – это фразы «Россия, это так далеко!», «У вас так холодно!»*
- 3. У англичан всегда был повышенный интерес к внешнему миру и любовь к путешествиям. Они легко передвигаются по всему миру. Средняя семья имеет одного сына, работающего в Марокко, другого – пишущего очерки в Индонезии, а третьего – служащего в лондонском Сити, чтобы всех их обеспечивать.*
- 4. Сейчас весь мир вокруг интересуется англичан либо с точки зрения угрозы их независимости, либо как место отдыха. Франция, Италия, Испания любимы за тёплый климат и вкусную еду. Германия – за возможность делать бизнес.*
- 5. Совершенно особые отношения связывают Англию с Америкой. Англичане крайне ревниво относятся к попыткам «узурпировать» их язык и традиции. Но всё равно Англия с Америкой тесно связаны, и английское общество ещё больше подвержено угрозе американизации, чем другие народы. Хотя и оказывает яростное сопротивление.*
- 6. Англия никогда не была местом массового паломничества русских. В России к ней относились скорее с уважением, чем с любовью. Во Франции развлекались и*

знакомились с модными новинками; в Германии отдыхали и лечились; в Италии наслаждались встречей с прекрасным. В Англию ездили, в первую очередь, дипломаты, деловые люди, учёные, а также политические изгнанники.

7. Все знают, что по сей день в английском мире сохранилось больше формальностей, чем в каком-либо другом. Здесь и старинные титулы и звания, и вышедшие из обращения в других культурах формы обращения, и требования к одежде в определённой ситуации: бабочки, галстуки, шляпки, перчатки.

8. Вы можете одеть самый немыслимый наряд, сделать невообразимую причёску, вести себя самым странным образом и быть уверенным, что никто из англичан не обратит на вас внимание. Во-первых, потому что это страна эксцентриков и чудаков, во-вторых, потому что здесь каждый свободен делать то, что ему захочется, ну и, наконец, потому, что сдержанность, самоконтроль и молчаливость считаются одним из основных жизненных правил.

The love of nature

Most of the English people live in the towns and cities. But they have an idealized vision of the countryside. To them, the countryside



means peace and quiet, beauty, good health and no crime. Most of them would live in a country village if they thought that they could find a way of earning a living there. Ideally, this village would consist of thatched cottages built around an area of grass. Nearby, there would be a pond with ducks on it. Nowadays, such a village is not actually very common, but it is stereotypical picture that is well-known to the English.

Perhaps this love of the countryside is another aspect of British conservatism. The countryside represents stability.

Many English people spend a lot of their time with 'nature'. They grow plants. They are careful about almost everything. Their lawns are closely cropped, their flower beds primly cultivated, and their trees neatly pruned. Everything is orderly.

Gardening

Gardening is one of the most popular hobbies in the country. Most English people love gardens, and this is probably one reason why so many people prefer to live in houses

rather than flats. For many people gardening is the foundation of social and competitive relationships. Flower-shows and vegetable-shows, with prizes for the best exhibits, are immensely popular, and to many gardeners the process of growing the plants seems more important than the merely aesthetic pleasure of looking at the flowers. In many places a competitive gardener's ambition is to grow the biggest cabbages or leeks or carrots.

The love of animals

The English have a sentimental attitude to animals. Nearly half of the households in



Britain keep at least one domestic pet. Families with children are most likely to have pets, but other people, especially old people, often keep a pet for company. Some animals belong to a group of people, for example, many British railway stations, old people's homes and even offices have a resident cat.

The most popular pets for children include cats, dogs, birds, fish, rabbits, guinea pigs, hamsters and mice, and children are usually expected to help take care of their pets. Older people are more likely to have a cat or dog, or perhaps a budgerigar. Since dogs and cats have different characters and needs, many people have a strong preference for one or other. People who say that they are **dog people** like the fact that dogs like to go for walks, enjoy being touched and need lots of attention. **Cat people** like cats because they are independent. Other people prefer exotic pets, such as snakes, spiders, iguanas and stick insects. Many pets can be bought at a **pet shop**, though people often buy dogs and cats direct from breeders or from homes for lost animals.

Pets are a responsibility which must be taken seriously. Dog owners in Britain have to buy a dog licence which allows them to keep a dog. Pure-bred dogs may also be taken to local and national shows where there are prizes for the best of each breed. But many people are not bothered about having a pure-bred dog and are happy with a mongrel. There is now pressure for dog owners to clear up any mess left by their dog, and people can be fined for not doing so.

Many cat owners give their cats a flea collar and a disc with their name and address on it in case they get lost.

Looking after a pet properly can be quite expensive. Many British people pay for their dog to stay at a local kennels, or their cat at a cattery when they go on holiday. Many people take out insurance to cover medical treatment by a vet and animals with emotional problems can be taken to a pet psychologist. When a pet dies many people bury it in their garden, but others arrange for it to be buried in a special pet cemetery.

Every year the English spend over 1.5 billion pounds on pet food. Wildlife programmes are the most popular kind of television documentary. Millions of families have 'bed-tables' in their gardens. There are even special hospitals which treat injured wild animals. Animals are protected by law. If, for instance, any one leaves a cat to starve in an empty house while he goes for his holiday, he can be sent to prison. English people support 380 charities which protect animals. There are over 250 inspectors who make sure nobody breaks the laws which protect the animals. Many charities get letters from the people enclosing a pound or two, saying "This all I can give". If people don't want a pet of their own they can sponsor an animal through a charity and receive regular information about it.

English homes

Almost everybody in Britain dreams of living in a detached house; that is, a house



which is a separate building. The saying, 'An Englishman's home is his castle' is well-known. It illustrates the desire for privacy and the importance attached to ownership which seem to be at the heart of the English attitude to housing.

Most people would be happy to live in a cottage, and if this is a thatched cottage so much the better. Most people try to avoid living in blocks of flats. The people who live in them are those who cannot afford to live anywhere else.

The important thing for the British houses is to feel cosy – that is, to create an atmosphere which seems warm even if it isn't really warm. Tradition is part of cosiness, and this can be suggested by being surrounded by old items of furniture. If you cannot have furniture which is old, you can always have other things that suggest age. The open fire is an example. It's the perfect traditional symbol of warmth because it's what most people used in the past to keep warm. People may like to sit at a window on a summer day, but for many months of the year they prefer to sit round the fire and watch the dancing flames.

In the Middle Ages the fire places in the halls of large castles were very wide. Only wood was burnt. Such wide fireplaces may still be seen in old inns.

Elizabethan fireplaces often had carved stone or woodwork over the fireplace, reaching to the ceiling. There were sometimes columns on each side of the fireplace.

When coal fires became common, fireplaces became much smaller. Grates were used to hold the coal. Above the fireplace there was usually a clock, and perhaps framed photographs.

SOCIAL AND EVERYDAY CONTACTS

The Club

British people give a relatively high value to the everyday personal contacts that they make.

A typical image among English institutions is **the club**. The clubs have an air of infinite mystery. Club is an unchallenged English invention. The club is based on two ancient British ideas – the segregation of classes and the segregation of sexes.

Many people in England belong to at least one club or society. Club is often used to refer to a group of people who regularly meet together socially or take part in sports.



Social clubs have a bar where members can sit and talk to each other and sometimes sleep. Members of the upper class or business people may belong to a gentlemen's club. Most of these are in London and even today only some of them allow women to be members. They are places to relax in, but also to make business contacts and take clients.

Some clubs combine social events with community service.

Nightclubs are places where many young people meet to drink and dance.

Many **sports clubs** hold parties and arrange social events, as well as providing facilities for various sports. Golf clubs are often expensive to join, and there is often a long waiting list. Other sports clubs include those for tennis, cricket, bowls and cycling. Many clubs own their own sports ground and clubhouse with a bar. In Britain, sports and social clubs are run by some big companies for their employees.

However, there are class of people not connected with the ruling circles, for example cultural clubs, whose members are actors, painters, writers and their friends. In most towns there are local societies for many interests, including singing, drama, film, folk music, archaeology, natural and local history and photography.

Many famous English people belonged to any clubs. Lord Mountbatten belonged to 14 clubs; Winston Churchill was not a clubman though he did found his own. The most hotel-like club is '**The Royal Automobile**' founded in 1897. It has three dining rooms, 12 000 members and a swimming pool once visited by Bernard Shaw. Two of the most active are '**The Reform**' and '**The Travellers**', founded in 1819 with the support of Duke Wellington.

The Pub

Pub (short for 'public house') is a building where people go to drink and meet their



friends which serves a range of alcoholic drinks and soft drinks. Pubs are important in the social life of many people in Britain. Pub is a peculiarly English institution, and beer is a national drink. People often go to the pub nearest their home, known as their **local**. Pub is

unique. It is different in character from bars or cafes in other countries. Pubs have their own character and atmosphere. Some pubs are pretty and charming; others are ugly and stink of old beer and cigarette smoke. Some attract young people by playing loud music, others have large television screens so that people can watch sport, some are quiet with little tables in dark corners and there are also traditional village pubs which are often very old and are the centre of village life.

The most popular drinks there are beer and lager. Pubs usually sell crisps and nuts and many do simple pub meals such as sausage and chips. Others, sometimes called **gastropubs**, sell a wider range of food and are like restaurants. In some pubs you can get a cup of coffee, but it is not common.

Before 1998 pubs were only allowed to open at lunchtime and in the evening, but since then opening hours have become more flexible so that pubs can open all day and even for 24 hours if they have a licence to do so.

Pubs have retained their special character. One of their notable aspects is that there is no waiter service. You have to go up to the bar, get your drinks and pay for them straightaway. You can get up and walk around whenever you want – it's like being in your own house. Unlike in any other eating or drinking place in Britain, the staff are expected to know the regular customers personally, to know what their usual drink is and to chat with them. When closing time approaches, the barman rings a bell and calls out "Last orders, please!", to give customers time to order one more drink. After the bar person has called "Time, ladies and gentlemen, please!" customers are allowed ten minutes to finish their drinks and leave. There are strict age limits: to drink alcohol, you have to be 18, but you can go in and have soft drinks such as cola or orange juice at 14.



Another notable aspect of pubs is their appeal to the idea of tradition. For example, each has its own name, which is shown on a brightly painted sign hanging outside with a picture on it. Many names are hundreds of years old and may have their roots in legends, such as 'St George and the Dragon', 'The Red Lion'; some are named after

kings and queens or historical figures, such as **‘The King’s Arms’**; **‘The King’s Head’**; many are called by the name of an aristocrat: **‘The Duke of Kendal’**, **‘The Duke of Cambridge’**; and others refer to things in country life, such as **‘The Plough’** or **‘The Bull’**.

On the doors of a pub you may see the words ‘Saloon Bar’ or ‘Public Bar’ or ‘Private Bar’. Although pubs have always been used by all social classes, there used to be an informal class division. The ‘public bar’ was used by the working class. This is where pub games could be found. The ‘saloon bar’ was used by the middle classes and was more comfortably furnished. Here there was a carpet on the floor and the drinks were a little more expensive. Some pubs also had a ‘private bar’, which was even more exclusive. Of course, nobody had to demonstrate class membership before entering this or that bar. These days, most pubs don’t bother with the distinction.

Occasionally the words ‘Free House’ can be seen beside the name of the pub. This doesn’t mean they serve free food and drink; it refers to the fact that the pub doesn’t buy its drinks from one particular brewery only.

Nowadays in the bar of every English pub there is a dart-board, and on most evenings you will find the game of darts being played. This is a traditional English game, and it was presumably developed from archery, which was much encouraged for military reasons during the Middle Ages. The darts are small and have a metal body and three feathers. Each player throws them in turn.

There are several typical features of pubs. Most pubs look old. It is part of their appeal to tradition. Even a newly built pub is often designed to look, inside and out, as if it were several hundred years old. The windows are small because, unlike the large plate-glass windows of cafes, they help to make the pub feel homely. It’s difficult to see inside the pub from the outside. The Victorians thought that it was somehow not proper for people to be seen drinking. That’s why very few pubs have tables outside. Instead, many have a garden at the back. Because children are only allowed inside a pub if the pub has a children’s certificate, a garden can be an important feature for some customers.

In big cities the traditional pub has a new rival – the wine bar. This is a very different sort of place, much quieter and much more sophisticated, with far less beer, no sport on TV and no smell. May be this is the future for British drinkers, but the old-fashioned pub will take a very long time to die.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- insular – островной
- stiff upper lip - *плотно сжатые губы*"; ≈ английский характер (символ выдержки и упорства, умения не пасовать перед трудностями)
- unflappable - невозмутимый, спокойный, хладнокровный
- reserve - сдержанность, скрытность
- compartment – купе
- modesty - скромность, благопристойность; застенчивость, стыдливость
- eccentricity – эксцентричность, странность, чудаковатость; своеобразие; экстравагантность, оригинальность;
- stoicism – стоицизм
- zeal - рвение, старание, усердие
- to be misled - вводить в заблуждение
- delusion – обман; галлюцинация; бред
- to dress down - одеваться просто; одеваться по-домашнему
- host – хозяин
- to prune - подрезать (деревья)
- guinea pig - морская свинка
- hamster – хомяк
- budgerigar - волнистый попугайчик
- mongrel – дворняжка
- cattery - кошачья гостиница"; место, где за плату можно оставить свою кошку, отправляясь в отпуск
- bride – невеста
- groom – жених
- veil – вуаль
- omen - знак, знамение, предзнаменование;
- soot and ashes - зола, пепел и сажка; копоть
- stag party - холостяцкая вечеринка; мальчишник
- hen party - девичник, женская вечеринка
- best man - свидетель (при бракосочетании)
- usher - швейцар; церемониймейстер;
- page – паж
- newly-weds – молодожёны

- obituary notice - некролог, газетное объявление о чьей-л. смерти
- grate – камин. очаг
- segregation - отделение, выделение, изоляция; сегрегация
- lager - лагерь, светлое пиво (приготовленное методом низового брожения)
- gastropub - гастронаб, гастрономический паб (в меню которого не только закуски, но и блюда, которые обычно можно заказать только в ресторане)
- appeal - призыв, обращение, воззвание (к кому-л.)
- brewery - пивоваренный завод
- archery - стрельба из лука;
- convenience food - продукты-полуфабрикаты (замороженные, высушенные или законсервированные продукты для быстрого приготовления)
- herb – разнотравье
- rosemary- розмарин
- thyme - тимьян, чабрец
- parsley – петрушка
- garlic – чеснок
- fennel - фенхель (сладкий укроп)
- basil – базилик
- cumin – тмин
- dates – финики
- maize - кукуруза; маис
- peanut - арахис, земляной орех
- pineapple – ананас
- snack - лёгкая закуска
- delicacy - деликатес, лакомство
- pastry dishes - выпечка, мучные кондитерские изделия
- poached egg - готовить яйца-пашот (варить без скорлупы в кипятке)
- preserved meat – консервированное мясо
- packeted cereal – хлопья
- stewed fruit – компот
- custard - сладкий заварной крем (из яиц и молока)
- a joint of meat — кусок мяса
- mystique - загадочность, неразгаданность, таинственность
- caviar - икра (рыбья; деликатесный продукт)
- stale – несвежий
- filling meal - достаточное количество чего-л. (обычно о пище и питье) ; доза, порция
- greasy spoon - дешёвая и грязная закусочная
- ambivalent - двойственный, противоречивый
- deluted – разбавленный
- bitter - горький (на вкус)
- draught beer - бочковое пиво, пиво в розлив
- cider – сидр
- shandy - шанди, шенди (смесь простого пива с имбирным пивом или с лимонадом)

-fizzy drink — газированный напиток
-quenching the thirst - утолять (жажду)

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Lord Mountbatten, Duke Wellington, Elizabeth I, Arabia, Sir Walter Raleigh, Manchester, Birmingham, McDonald, India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Caribbean, Hong Kong, Cyprus.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a group consisting of two parents and their children living together as a unit;*
 - *a Christian ceremony in which a baby is made a member of the Christian church and is officially given his or her name;*
 - *a holiday spent together by a newly married couple;*
 - *a woman who is getting married or who has just got married;*
 - *a man on his wedding day or just before and after the event;*
 - *unusual behaviour that other people consider strange;*
 - *a marriage ceremony and the party or special meal that often takes place after the ceremony;*
 - *an alcoholic drink made from fermented grape juice;*
 - *the activity of tending and cultivating a garden, especially as a pastime;*
 - *an alcoholic drink made from fermented apple juice;*
 - *an animal that you keep in your home to give you company and pleasure;*
 - *a building where people can have drinks, especially alcoholic drinks, and talk to their friends;*
 - *an association dedicated to a particular interest or activity;*
 - *the start of life as a physically separate being;*
 - *a bitter alcoholic drink made from grain;*
 - *ceremony or service held shortly after a person's death, usually including the person's burial or cremation;*
 - *a cooked sweet food made with flour, fat, and eggs, and usually served hot;*
 - *a specific time that can be named, for example a particular day or a particular year.*
- (eccentricity, gardening, pet, family, wedding, birth, funeral, christening, date, bride, groom, honeymoon, club, pub, pudding, wine, beer, cider)**

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. How can you describe the English character? What are the main qualities of the English people?*
- 2. Why do the English people love the nature? What does the countryside represent? What is the most popular hobby in the country?*
- 3. How do the English show their sentimental attitude to animals? What are their favourite pets?*
- 4. Is family identity strong or weak in England? Why?*
- 5. What are the most significant family events in England? Describe them.*
- 6. What is the English attitude to housing? What are the most important things for the British houses?*
- 7. How do the British people appreciate the everyday personal contacts?*
- 8. What are the typical English social institutions? Why?*
- 9. Why are pubs so important in the social life of many people in Britain?*
- 10. What English people usually eat? What is their attitude to food?*
- 11. When do English people usually eat?*
- 12. Are there any good restaurants in England?*
- 13. What do English people like to drink?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English, using the words and phrases from the texts.

- 1. В Англии есть свои ярко выраженные региональные различия между севером и югом, западом и востоком, не только в характере, еде, традициях, одежде, но и в языке – жители разных регионов порой не могут понять друг друга.*
- 2. Жизнь в городе, в каменных блоках, в окружении эмигрантов и туристов, среди магазинов и интернациональных кафе – это реальность, а зелёные просторы и уютный дом в цветах – это мечта, которую большинство могут себе позволить только выйдя на пенсию.*
- 3. Вы получите гораздо более полное представление об Англии и англичанах, если побываете в сельской местности, разглядывая маленькие домики с нарядными клумбами, заглянете в местную церковь, построенную в 14 веке, посидите и понаблюдаете жизнь и нравы в местном пабе.*
- 4. К дому у англичан отношение особенное, трепетное. Почти все дома в Англии имеют имена, что демонстрирует очень личное отношение англичан к своему жилью: «Под дубом», «У ивы», «Кошкин дом», «Приют контрабандистов» и т.д.*

5. Англичане не очень охотно приглашают к себе домой, предпочитая общение в кафе и ресторанах. Если же вы всё-таки получили такое приглашение, приготовьтесь к неожиданности. Никто не будет специально к вашему приходу убираться, всё будет так, как каждый день: в гостиной на полу могут стоять грязные чашки, а в углу лежать старый свитер; стол на кухне завален коробками, из которых доставали еду.

6. Пикник – одно из тех английских изобретений, которые стали достоянием всего мира. Свежий воздух, сельская местность, простая, но сытная еда – всё это вполне соответствует английскому духу.

7. Не берите в отелях Англии кофе. Вам принесут серую жидкость, которая не кажется достойной начала дня. Существует распространённое мнение, что для француза важно качество пищи, для немца – количество, а для англичан – хорошие манеры за столом.

8. Англичане знают толк в выпивке. Причём, выпить любят самые разные слои общества. Англичанки стараются не отставать от мужчин.

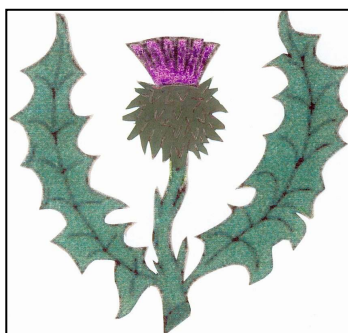
9. Паб – очень старинное английское заведение. Ещё римляне, завоевав Англию 2000 лет назад, открыли свои первые таверны по продаже вина и еды.

The Scots, the Welsh, the Irish and their Traditional Culture

Scottish Traditions and Signs of National Identity

To many people around the world, Scotland is known for its clans, kilts, castles and the poetry and songs of Robert Burns. Scots themselves are likely to define their national identity not only by reference to their traditional symbols but also in terms of the modern country in which they live and work.

The national emblems



The Thistle

The thistle is the national emblem of Scotland.

The Patron Saint

The patron saint of Scotland is **St Andrew**. He was one of the 12 apostles, the brother of St Peter. He became the patron saint of the Picts in the 8th century, when, it is thought, his bones were brought to a town on the east coast of Scotland, later called St Andrews. According to tradition, he was killed in Greece on a cross in a shape of an X, and so this cross is on the Scottish flag.

Traditions and festivals

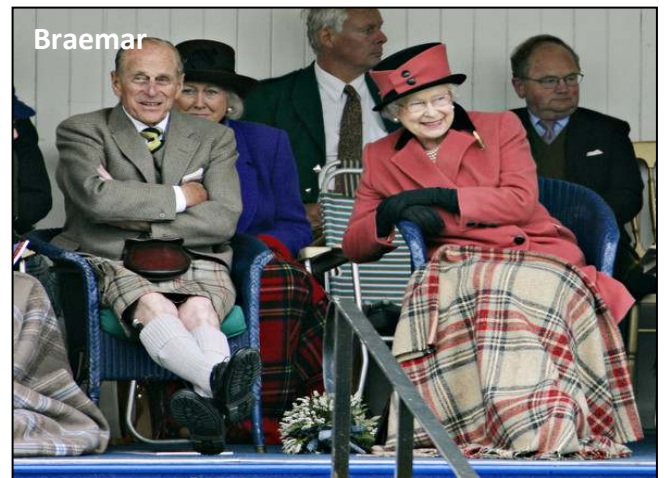
The Highland Games

Highland Games or Highland Gathering is a Scottish outdoor festival. The games, which are now celebrated in the Highlands, first started in Celtic times and were always held in front of the king. Competitions were held to find the strongest and fastest men to be body-guards and messengers.

Essential to the modern games are the events such as **putting the stone, throwing the hammer and tossing the caber**.

Other events include **running** and **jumping**, as well as competitions for **playing the bagpipes** and **dancing** traditional Highland dances. For all events, except races, the kilt must be worn.

The games held in the northeast are best known for the athletic events, whilst the best piping is traditionally found in the Highlands and Islands off the west coast. The most famous is the **Braemar Gathering** in north-east Scotland, held in September.



Tattoo spectacular

The Edinburgh Military Tattoo takes place every August and September, and is known throughout the world. 600 people are surrounded on three sides by an audience of 9 000. On the fourth side is the castle itself which provides an exciting setting for the evening's performance of military music, marching and other spectacular displays.

The name 'tattoo' has an interesting origin. Traditionally soldiers were told to return to the living-quarters each night by a beat of the drum which sounded like 'tat-too'.

On the final night of the display the sky is filled with the bright colours of exploding fireworks.

Edinburgh International Festival

Scotland has a rich cultural tradition. In the last fifty years, in particular, Scottish literature, drama, music, dance and the visual arts have all earned a new and outstanding reputation.



Edinburgh International Festival is a festival of music and drama that has been held in Edinburgh for three weeks every summer since 1947. Glyndebourne Opera, the Vienna Philharmonic Orchestra, the Old Vic Theatre and Sadler's Wells Ballet were only a few of the participants of this first venture in 1947. The festival was a success, and has been held annually ever since.

The Festival is quite international in its character giving as a rule a varied representation of artistic production from a number of countries.

Since the Festival started in 1947 as a gesture of the Scottish Renaissance against post-war austerity, much has blossomed around it. Fringe events bring performing bodies from all over Britain and beyond, and student groups are always prominent among them, responsible often for interesting experiments in the drama.

Hogmanay

At midnight on 31st December throughout Great Britain people celebrate the coming of the New Year, by holding hands in a large circle and singing the song, written by Scotland's most famous poet, Robert Burns. He wrote much of his poetry in the Scots dialect.

New Year's Eve is a more important festival in Scotland than it is in England, and it even has a special name. It's not clear where the word 'hogmanay' comes from, but it is connected with the provision of food and drink for all visitors to your home on 31st December. In addition, many people believe that you will have good luck for the coming year if the first person to enter your house after midnight is a 'tall dark stranger'. It is also thought lucky if this person brings a piece of coal and some white bread. There is much dancing and singing until the early hours of the morning.



Burns' night

25th January is celebrated all over the world by Scotsmen wherever they are, as it is the birthday of **Robert Burns**. As at Hogmanay, a special meal of **haggis**¹, potatoes and turnip is eaten, washed down by a lot of whisky. The haggis is carried into the dining room behind a piper wearing traditional dress. He then reads a poem written especially for the haggis.

Notes:

¹**haggis** – is a famous Scottish dish made mainly from a sheep's heart, lungs and liver and boiled in a bag made from part of a sheep's stomach.

Scottish people

People who live in Scotland are Scots or Scotsmen. Many people in Scotland have the name MacDonald or MacKenzie. 'Mac' means 'son of' and people with this name usually feel they belong to the same family or clan. Campbell or Cameron are other common surnames. Common boys' names are Angus, Donald or Duncan, and girls' names are Morag, Fiona or Jean. The names Jimmy and Jock are so common that many English people call a man from Scotland 'a Jimmy' or 'a Jock'.

Scottish people like to dance very much. They say that they dance better than English people. Glasgow has more dancing schools than any other European city. A lot of people enjoy Scottish dancing.

Scottish people speak English but with their own accent. For example, when a Scotsman uses the word 'arm' he says 'ar-r-m' so that you can hear the sound [r]. Many Scottish people still use some Scottish words when they



speak English. 'Wee' meaning 'small' is often heard in such expressions as 'wee laddie' – small boy. 'A bonnie lass' is a 'pretty girl' and 'a bairn' is a young child. If someone answers your questions with 'aye' they are agreeing with you: 'aye' means 'yes'. Finally, if you are offered a 'wee dram' be careful: you'll be given some whisky to drink and you will probably have to drink it all in one go.

The Scottish people have a reputation according to which they are the stingiest people on earth. This is not true, of course, as anyone who visited Scotland will tell you. Scottish people say that they like spending money on their friends and visitors – not on themselves. The Scottish people are very clever and simple, and they also have a natural sense of humour. People say that Scotsmen work hard: many good doctors and engineers come from Scotland.



Scotland has a tradition of educational excellence. Its schools and universities are broad-based and egalitarian, and are highly valued by the Scottish people. The quality of education in the country attracts an ever-growing

number of students and researchers from many other parts of the world.

Following their school careers, students with appropriate qualifications can move to further or higher education at one of Scotland's 13 universities. Most Scottish Universities offer a four-year undergraduate degree course whereas, in England, the first degree course only lasts three years. Three universities were founded in the 15th century, and a fourth in the 16th century. They are thus much older than any of the English universities, other than Oxford and Cambridge.

Education is one of Scotland's greatest talents and the arts are flourishing. Scots have been prominent in almost every field of activity, from philosophy and literature to engineering and medicine, and many other countries have benefited from Scottish expertise.

Clans and Tartans

The Gaelic word 'clann' means 'family' or 'descendants' and the great clans of the 16th and 17th centuries were indeed very similar to enormous families, ruled by powerful chiefs. Sometimes there were fierce battles between different clans but nowadays the MacDonalds and the MacKenzies, the Campbells and the Lindsays all live in peace with each other. Among the most famous clans were: Campbell, Fraser, Munro, Cameron, Stewart, Murray, MacDonald, MacLean and MacKenzie. It is possible to find people with these surnames in many English-speaking countries, and they all feel they share the same background.



Today clan societies flourish in Scotland and, perhaps, more bravely elsewhere in the world. These societies are acquiring land and property in their respective clan countries, financing magazines, establishing museums to preserve the relics, founding educational trusts, and, perhaps, above all, keeping alive the family spirit.

The wearing of **tartans** or coloured checks was common in the Highlands before the defeat by the English in 1745. Originally, the tartan was worn as a single piece of cloth,

drawn in at the waist and thrown over the shoulders. The kilt didn't become popular until the beginning of the 18th century. The fashion for tartan was fostered by the amazing spectacle of a kilted King George IV at Holyrood House in 1822, and demands for clan tartan poured into the manufactures.

Each clan has its own tartan and, since the first international gathering of the clans in 1972, many more people have become interested in traditional forms of Scottish dress. By the tartan you can learn which clan the man belongs to. There are more than 300 tartans: some clans have more than one tartan. The Royal family, for example, wore the Stuart tartan because they came from the family of the Stuart kings of Scotland and England. But now, the Queen of Great Britain has another tartan. It is grey with black, red and blue.

A Scotsman's traditional clothes are plain long socks, shoes, a kilt worn by men, a tie, a tweed jacket and a beret and a leather sporran, that is a pouch (purse made of fur) hanging from a narrow belt round the hips. The Scottish beret is a woollen cap without a brim but with a pompon or a feather on top, traditionally worn pulled down at one side. It got its name after Tam o'Shanter, the hero of Burns' poem of that name.

Some people in the north of Scotland wear a kilt every day. But in other parts of the country most Scottish wear just the same clothes as the English. They put on their traditional clothes only on holidays and wear them with pleasure.

Tartans are now part of international fashion. However, many visitors to Scotland are keen to find out if they have historical connections with any particular clan so that they may proudly wear the correct tartan.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- in terms of – понятным образом*
- homely plant – простое растение*
- to plunder – грабить*
- station – местоположение, боевой пост*
- practicable ford – проходимый брод*

- weary – утомлённый, уставший
- to pitch – разбить (лагерь)
- sentinel – часовой
- to slaughter – устроить резню
- to shriek – пронзительно визжать
- timely – своевременный
- to acquire – приобретать
- respective – соответствующий
- in their respective places – каждый на своём месте
- brim – поля шляпы
- to toss the caber – подбрасывать бревно
- hammer – молот
- venture – начинание
- austerity – строгость, простота
- fringe – дополнительный
- consent – согласие
- cook – повар
- baker – пекарь
- bannock – пресная лепёшка
- scone – пшеничная лепёшка
- girdle – плоская сковорода для блинчиков
- crumpet – сдобная пышка
- shortbread – песочное печенье
- bun – булочка с изюмом
- mealy – рыхлый, рассыпчатый
- oatmeal – овсяная мука
- stingy – скупой
- tissue – ткань
- mould – плесень
- egalitarian – уравнительный, равноправный
- expertise – знания и опыт, компетенция

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Braemar Gathering, the Vienna Philharmonic Orchestra, Sadler's Wells Ballet, Hogmanay, MacDonald, MacKenzie.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a hot sweet dish, often like a cake, made from flour, fat and eggs with fruit, jam in or on it;

- *a flat bag, usually made of leather or fur, that is worn by men in front of the kilt as part of the Scottish national dress;*
 - *a wild plant with prickly leaves and purple, yellow or white flowers made up of a mass of narrow petals pointing upwards;*
 - *a skirt made of tartan fabric that reaches to the knees and is traditionally worn by Scottish men;*
 - *two people who are seen together, especially if they are married or in a romantic relationship;*
 - *a group of families who are related to each other;*
 - *a series of public events connected with a particular activity or idea;*
 - *a small device containing powder that burns or explodes and produces bright coloured lights and loud noises, used especially at celebrations;*
 - *a person who strongly believes in a policy or an idea and tries to make other people believe in it;*
 - *a belief, custom or way of doing smth. that has existed for a long time among a particular group of people;*
 - *an event in which people compete with each other to find out who is the best;*
- (thistle, clan, kilt, apostle, sporran, competition, firework, couple, festival, tradition, pudding)***

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

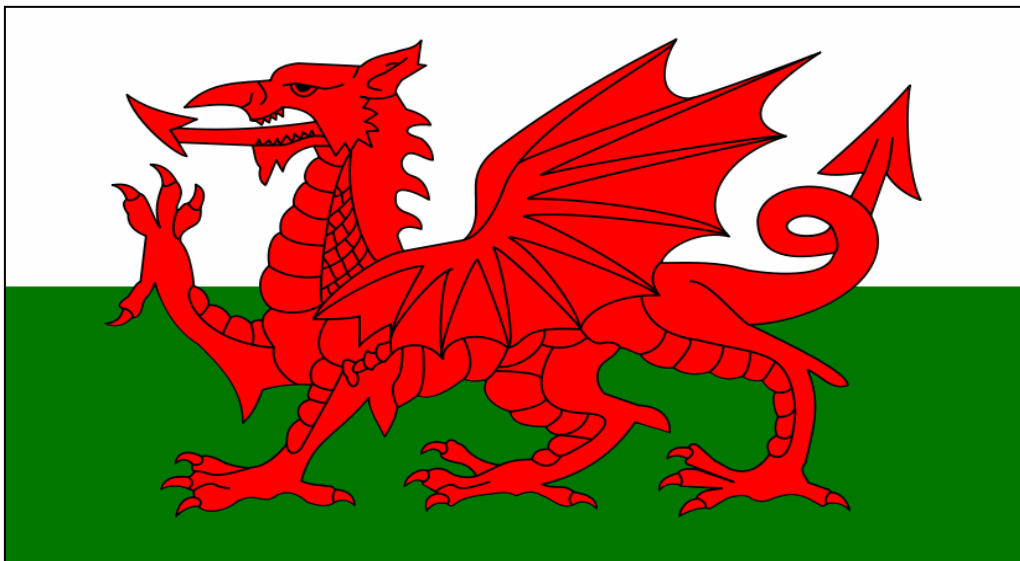
- 1. What are the main Scottish symbols that define their national identity?*
- 2. Why did the thistle become the national plant emblem in Scotland?*
- 3. Who is the Patron Saint of Scotland? Why?*
- 4. What does clan mean? Why are clans so important for the Scottish?*
- 5. What is the history of tartans?*
- 6. Do the members of the Royal Family wear tartans?*
- 7. What are a Scotsman's traditional clothes?*
- 8. What are the main traditions and festivals in Scotland? Why are they so popular all over the world?*
- 9. What Scottish poet is the most popular in Scotland? How are the Scotsmen celebrate his birthday?*
- 10. Why did Gretna Green become the famous Scottish village?*
- 11. What do the Scottish people like to eat and drink?*
- 12. What reputation do the Scottish people have? How are they characterized?*

13. *Who was Alexander Fleming? Why are the Scottish people proud of him?*
14. *Do the Scottish people pay much attention to education?*

III. Test-translation. Translate the suggested sentences from Russian into English.

1. Клетчатые тартаны приобретают не только шотландцы, но и потомки эмигрантов, которых сентиментальность приводит на родину дедов из США, Канады и Австралии.
2. Существует специальная организация «Шотландское общество производителей килтов», которое внимательно следит за соблюдением соответствий шотландской клетки.
3. Когда в Highland раздаётся звон бубнов и пение волынок, это означает только одно – начался Highland Games – традиционный местный праздник со спортивными соревнованиями, музыкой и танцами, которые проводятся по очереди в 50 местностях с июня по сентябрь.
4. Истоки Highland Games спрятаны во мраке истории. По одной из версий, соревнования придумал в 11 веке король Малкольм III, чтобы, таким образом, отобрать из кланов самых быстрых и сильных кандидатов для службы в армии.

The Welsh and their traditional culture



Although visitors don't need passports to cross the border from England into Wales they soon realize that they are entering a country with its own distinct geography, culture, traditions and, of course, language. But Welsh nationalism is mainly cultural and linguistic. The national flag, with its fine dragon, is regularly displayed, the Welsh national anthem played and sung.

The national emblems and symbols

The plant-symbol

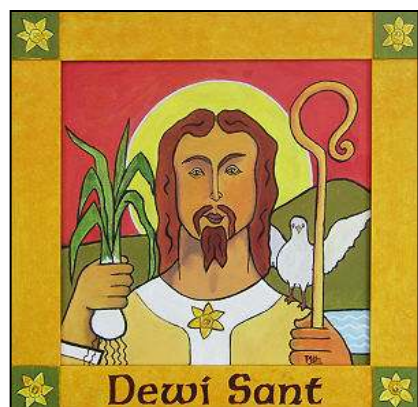


Welshmen all over the world celebrate St David's Day by wearing either **leeks** or **daffodils**. The daffodil is associated with St David's Day, due to the belief that it flowers on that day. It became an alternative to the Leek as a Welsh emblem in the present century, because some thought the leek vulgar.

St David's Day

Dewi ('David' in English), was the son of the Welsh chieftain. He was brought up as a Christian and went abroad to learn more about the life of a monk. Then he returned to Wales and founded many monasteries which became centres of religion and learning in the Welsh countryside. The monks lived a simple life of prayer, growing their own herbs and vegetables and offering generous hospitality to anyone in need. Because of David's holiness and his inspiring teaching, he was made a bishop.

David is thought to have died on 1st March, AD 589, and his shrine at St David's



was a place of pilgrimage in the Middle Ages. Later, when people of North and South Wales became one nation, he was chosen as the patron saint of Wales.

A legend tells how David suggested that his people should wear a leek in their bonnets during battles so that they could be easily recognized; Welsh Guards are still distinguished by a green and white plume in their black bearskins.

At Windsor, on the Sunday nearest St David's Day, it is now a tradition that

every member of the Brigade of Welsh Guards is given a leek by a member of the Royal Family. However, as St David's Day is celebrated at the beginning of spring when daffodils are blooming, this flower has become a second, more graceful emblem of Wales. David's own emblem is a dove.

It is said that David had a sweet singing voice. He encouraged his monks to sing as well as possible for the glory of God, and perhaps this was the beginning of the Welsh tradition of fine made-voice choirs.

Many churches are dedicated to David in south-west Wales, and if you are travelling there, you might visit the cathedral at St David's.

Favourite places and souvenirs

All over Wales there are many **wishing wells** into which people still throw money. Some wishing wells are said to help love affairs, others can heal the sick.

Every tourist should remember that a favourite souvenir for the tourists is a Welsh **love spoon**. These are made of wood and are carved very beautifully. Originally, they were made by young men as a love token for their sweethearts. If the girl kept this present, all was well, but if she sent it back, she didn't want him.

Language

The Welsh are very proud of their language and culture. People in Wales speak English but at the same time they have their own language – Welsh. Welsh is one of the Celtic languages, like Scottish and Irish Gaelic. Some Welsh people learn Welsh before they learn English, and some of these people never learn much English. Some Welsh families speak Welsh to each other at home, but they read English newspapers and English books.



The Welsh Language Act of 1967 said that all official documents should be in both languages, and most road signs are printed in English and Welsh. Since 1982 there has been an independent TV channel broadcasting mainly in Welsh.

In recent years the Welsh have attracted people who wish to protest against the influence of English on the Welsh language and culture.

What's in a name?

The way in which British surnames have developed is very complicated. Before the Normans arrived, the use of surnames wasn't really known. Many English surnames were originally connected with a person's job (Charles Baker, Margaret Thatcher); someone's size (Jack Long, Mary Little); family relationship (Robin Williamson – son of William, Peter Richardson).

The most common Welsh surnames were all originally Christian names in some form: Dylan Thomas, Roger Davies (a form of David), David Williams etc. Many other names come from the tradition of calling a child 'son of' using the Welsh word 'p'. This 'p' can be found at the beginning of many common Welsh names (Gary Prichard, which is the same as the English Richardson).

Welshmen living in England are often called by the nickname 'Taffy'. This may come from the River Taff, which runs through the capital Cardiff, or it may come from Dafydd, the Welsh form of David.

The Welsh



The traditional culture in Wales has always placed special emphasis on the reading of poetry and the singing of choirs. In the 19th century there was a powerful puritan religious movement that preached a good and simple life. In the chapels the oratory of the preacher and the strong singing of male voice choirs were used to win the hearts of the people and turn them away from bad living. Welsh people like singing together. Every village has more than one choir. They sing in competitions, on holidays and every time they want to sing. Welshmen sing louder than anybody. They sing very loudly when they are going to a football match in a bus, and they sing in the stadium. Welsh people are very proud of Wales!

The Welsh wear the same clothes as the English. But on holidays a Welsh woman wears a red cloak, a long black skirt, an apron and a high black hat on her head. The men don't have a national costume. They smile, "We have no money after we have bought clothes for our wives".

The Welsh Eisteddfod

Although not many Welsh words are well-known in England, the word 'eisteddfod' is understood by almost everybody. This is the Welsh name for an annual competition where people meet to dance, sing and read poems.

Today, Eisteddfod is held in many places throughout Wales, particularly from May to early November. The habit of holding similar events dates back to early history, and there are records of competitions for Welsh poets and musicians in the 12th century. The Eisteddfod sprang from National Assembly of Bards. It was held occasionally up to 1819, but since then has become an annual event for the encouragement of Welsh literature and music and the preservation of the Welsh language and ancient national customs. The country's best choirs prepare all year; they sing the country's ancient songs.

The Royal National Eisteddfod of Wales is held annually early in August. It attracts Welsh people from all over the world. The programme includes male and mixed choirs, brass-band concerts, many children's events, drama, arts and crafts, and the ceremony of **the Crowning of the Bard**. The prize is awarded to the best poet in a very colourful ceremony. When the poet's name is called, he comes forward to the platform. There he is given a purple robe to wear and a crown of golden oak-leaves is placed on his head. He is given very little money for his poem (20 pounds) but he is treated with the highest honours and respect the whole year – he is the king of poets.

Next in importance is great **Llangollen International Music Eisteddfod**, held early in July and attended by competitors from many countries, all wearing their picturesque and



often colourful national costumes. There are at least twenty-five major Eisteddfodau from May to November.

In addition to the Eisteddfodau, about thirty major Welsh Singing Festivals are held throughout Wales from May until early November.

The Welsh National Game

Rugby is the national game of Wales, and during the 1970s the Welsh team was



thought to be the best of the world.

When the Welsh side are playing at home at Cardiff their supporters often try to encourage them to play better by singing the Welsh National anthem, “Land of my Fathers”. The sound of thousands of Welsh voices singing this famous song helps the Welsh side especially when this is against the English!

The Irish and their Traditional Culture

National symbols

What the red rose is to Englishmen and the leek and daffodil to the Welsh, the little



shamrock is to the Irish, and every Irishman wears this national emblem on St Patrick’s Day, March 17. It’s worn on memory of Ireland’s patron saint, whose cross is embodied in the Union Jack by the thin red one under the cross of St George.

A popular notion is that when preaching the doctrine of the Trinity to the pagan Irish St Patrick used the shamrock, a small white clover bearing three leaves on the stem as an illustration of the mystery.

Shortly after the formation of the Irish Guards in 1902 the custom of presenting the national emblem to the new regiment on St Patrick's Day began.

National legends



There is an old legend about how Ireland got its name. The legend tells us that the famous green Isle was at one time hidden under water. But the water only retreated for a short while every seventh year. During such a time when the

island appeared out of the water it looked so green and beautiful that many brave people tried to build homes and remain on it. Then the beautiful island would be swallowed up by the sea again and disappear for another seven years.

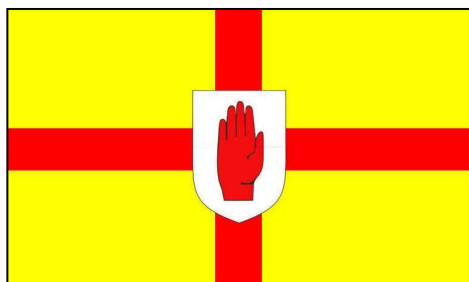
It was known, however, that the island could be saved from the sea only by burying a piece of iron in its heart as soon as it appeared out of the water. Since that time iron was believed to be a luck-bringing metal.

When another seven years passed and the island appeared out of the water, a certain brave man came to it and buried his sword in its heart. After that the island was not swallowed up by the waves again. Because of this legend the island came to be known as 'iron land' or Ireland. It is because of this tradition that iron is always believed to be lucky by the Irish, and when a piece of iron is found in the form of a horseshoe, it is put up for luck above the house door.

The Coat-of-Arms and flags of Ireland

The former flag of Northern Ireland, which today is only used as a loyalist emblem.

Do you know that on the Coat-of-Arms of Ireland there is a picture of a red right hand? Why does Ireland have a picture of a hand on its Coat-of-Arms?



It happened three thousand years ago. Two Viking chieftains went with their men in two big boats to Ireland. The first chieftain's name was Heremon O'Neill, the



name of the other we do not know. “The first of us who will touch the Irish land will be the king of it,” they said.

At last they were near the Irish coast. The two boats were going faster and faster. But the boat of Heremon O’Neill was not so fast as the boat of the other chieftain.

When the boats were quite near the land, O’Neill quickly cut off his right hand and threw it over to the land. His hand touched the land and he became the king of Ireland. That is why there is a picture of a hand on the Coat-of-Arms of Ireland.

The traditional flag of Ireland was a blue flag with a golden harp.

Today’s Irish flag dates from 1919. Orange was adopted by the Protestants after William of Orange and the white stands for peace.

Famous Irish writers and poets

Jonathan Swift (1667-1745) is the greatest satirist in the history of British



literature. He is the author of the immortal work ‘*Gulliver’s Travels*’ which all of our schoolchildren know very well.

Jonathan Swift was born in Dublin in 1667. Swift’s father died a few months before the birth of his son, and the boy



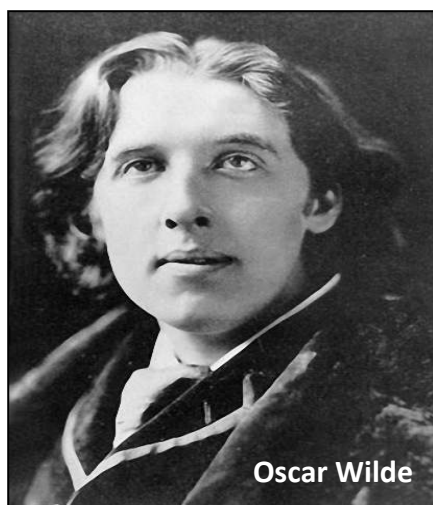
saw but little of his mother. Swift’s school and college life were passed at Kilkenny School and Trinity College, Dublin. He wrote ‘*The Drapier’s Letters*’, his famous pamphlets in defence of the Irish people, and at the same time he wrote another pamphlet ‘*A Modest Proposal*’ in defence of Irish children.

Thomas Moore (1779-1852), an Irish poet who sang his native land in the same way as Robert Burns sang Scotland. He came from a well-to-do Irish family. Thomas Moore was born in Dublin. He studied at Dublin University and then studied law in London.

He published his first verses as '*Poems by Thomas Little*' in 1801, then his romantic stories. His '*Irish Melodies*' made a deep impression on Byron. Thomas Moore was George Byron's friend and after Byron's death he wrote the first biography of this great English poet, '*Letters and Journals of Lord Byron, with Notices of His Life*'.

In his work '*National Airs*' there were two songs on Russian melodies. One of them, "Those Evening Bells" was translated into Russian by I. Kozlov and became very popular.

Oscar Wilde (1856-1900) was the son of a well-known Irish doctor and scientist. His mother was a very educated woman, a poetess who published many poems and other works.



Oscar Wilde received a very good education. He began his education at Trinity College in Dublin and graduated from Oxford in 1878.

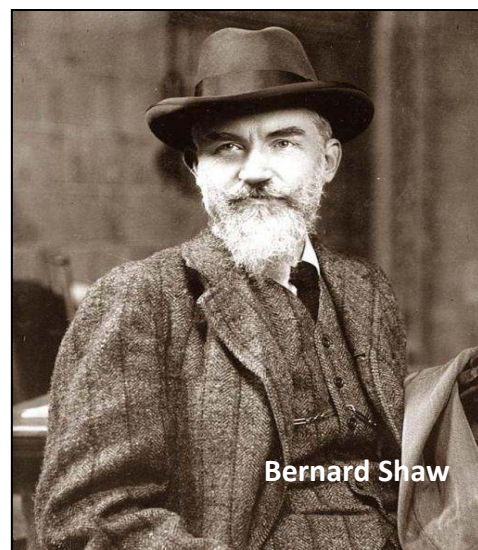
Oscar Wilde wrote many poems, fairy tales, plays, critical essays and the novel '*The Picture of Dorian Gray*'.

Oscar Wilde died in Paris and is buried there.

George Bernard Shaw (1856-1950) was born in Dublin, Ireland.

Bernard Shaw's childhood was very hard. His father was taken to drink and Shaw's mother left him and went to London where she gave lessons of music to earn her living.

At the age of fourteen, after graduating from secondary school, Shaw was put into a job as clerk in a land agent's office. Bernard Shaw was rather educated and he was better informed in many things than most of his fellow clerks at the office. Shakespeare, Byron, Shelley and many other great poets and writers had been read and re-read by him. He could discuss art, for he had studied the best works at the Ireland National Gallery. In 1876



Shaw went to London where he became a journalist and wrote music, art and dramatic critiques for various periodicals.

Bernard Shaw became a Socialist in 1882 and took an active part in the Socialist movement.

Bernard Shaw loved Russian realistic drama and with a few English writers and actors in his time brought the plays by Chekhov, Gorky and Tolstoy onto the English stage.

In 1925 Bernard Shaw was awarded **the Nobel Prize** for literature and he gave it all to spreading the Swedish literature in England.

Bernard Shaw spent his last years in a small estate of Ayott St. Lawrence where at the age of 90 he still undertook bicycle rides every morning. He continued to write to the last days of his life.

George Bernard Shaw died on November 2, 1950 at the age of 94.

Ireland's distinctive drinks

Everyone will tell you that 'Guinness' (sort of beer) tastes best in Dublin. Abroad, this famous velvet-black stout is rich and bitter; in Dublin it's creamy and subtle. Various explanations are put forward for this phenomenon: the Dublin water, the way the beer is kept, the temperature it is served at. Whatever the reason, 'Guinness' has made its reputation internationally, to the extent that it is the best known Irish drink. Yet there are many others, including comparable stouts, such as Murphy's from Cork. Ireland also has its own fine whiskeys (spelled with the -e -), with a smooth flavor that sets them apart from Scottish whisky. 'Jameson's', 'Paddy's' and 'Old Bushmill's' are the leading brands.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- *chieftain* - вождь (клана, племени)
- *bonnet* - мужская шотландская шапочка
- *plume* - перо

- *well* - колодец
- *puritan* - сторонник строгого образа жизни, пуританин; пуританский
- *to preach* - проповедовать; читать проповедь
- *shamrock* - трилистник (символ Ирландии)
- *notion* - взгляд, мнение, точка зрения
- *Trinity* - Троица, триединный Бог (в христианстве)
- *clover* – клевер
- *creamy* - мягкий, густой, сочный
- *subtle* – нежный, изысканный
- *smooth flavor* - неперпкий, мягкий (об алкогольных напитках) аромат

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: *Eisteddfod, Jonathan Swift, Thomas Moore, Oscar Wilde, George Bernard Shaw, Dublin.*

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a poet, traditionally one reciting epics and associated with a particular oral tradition;*
- *a member of a male religious community that is usually separated from the outside world;*
- *a plant related to the onion, with flat overlapping leaves and it is eaten as a vegetable;*
- *a competitive festival of music and poetry in Wales;*
- *an organized group of singers, especially one that takes part in church services or performs in public;*
- *a small plant with three round leaves on each stem;*
- *a yellow spring flower with a central part shaped like a tube and a long stem.*

(choir, leek, daffodil, monk, shamrock, well, eisteddfod, bard)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. *What is the main symbol on the national flag of Wales?*

2. *What is the patron saint of Wales? How do Welshmen all over the world celebrate the day of their patron saint?*
3. *Are there any legends about the patron saint of Wales?*
4. *What are the main favourite places and souvenirs of Wales?*
5. *Why are the Welsh very proud of their language and culture?*
6. *How were the most common Welsh surnames developed?*
7. *What are the main features of the Welsh culture?*
8. *What is Eisteddfod?*
9. *What is the Welsh national game?*
10. *What are the main national symbols of the Irish?*
11. *Why does Ireland have a picture of a hand on its Coat-of-Arms?*
12. *What was the traditional flag of Ireland? Describe the modern flag of Ireland?*
13. *What did you know about famous Irish writers and poets?*
14. *How were the most common Irish surnames developed?*
15. *What are the most favourite Ireland's distinctive drinks?*

III. Test-translation. Translate the suggested information from Russian into English.

1. В Ирландии много прекрасных полей для гольфа, потому что они очень любят эту игру. Но наиболее живописные и сложные площадки для гольфа можно найти в графствах Керри и Корк.
2. Любовь к лошадям у ирландцев в крови. Присутствуя на скачках, ирландцы теряют над собой контроль, особенно, если кто-то поставил деньги на победу своего любимца. По правде говоря, лошадиные скачки и разведение лошадей – основные статьи дохода для графств.
3. Валлийцы предпочитают проводить время на свежем воздухе, поэтому вдоль реки Ууе тянется пешая тропа длиной 107 миль. По пути встречается много уютных мест для отдыха.
4. Одно из красивейших мест Уэльса – Тинтерское аббатство. Монастырь 14 века был разрушен во времена церковного раскола, когда католические церкви уничтожались по приказу короля Генриха VIII и его дочери королевы Елизаветы. Но эти развалины только подчёркивают величие монастыря.
5. Если вы заблудитесь в Уэльсе, то, скорее всего, наткнётесь на такой замок (Caldicot Castle). Они повсюду, куда бы вы ни пошли, и здесь их больше, чем в любой другой стране мира.
6. Ландадно – чудный курорт на побережье в Уэльсе. Здесь нет памятников средневековой архитектуры, но как нигде чувствуется атмосфера викторианской элегантности. Именно она притягивает сюда европейскую аристократию. В Ландадно отдыхали Наполеон и Льюис Кэррол, автор «Алисы в стране чудес». Не удивительно, что при таких клиентах здешние магазины считались самыми дорогими во всей стране, после Лондона, разумеется.
7. В Уэльсе очень плодородная почва. Всё, что выращивается на Британских островах, можно найти на юге Уэльса. Но главная красота Уэльса – это музыка. Валлийские мужские хоры известны в каждой стране мира.

Lesson 8

POLITICAL SYSTEM OF ENGLAND.

FUNCTIONS OF THE MONARCH.

ROYAL REGALIA.

The Houses of Parliament

British Parliament is housed in the Westminster Palace, which is situated on the left bank of the river Thames. Westminster has long been connected with royalty and government. King Edward the Confessor built a palace beside the river Thames. His successors made the palace their main residence. Gradually Westminster became the centre of government.

Westminster Palace is famous as the Houses of Parliament. It is the seat of the British Parliament – the highest legislative authority in Great Britain and its legislative power is unlimited.

The House of Commons occupies the northern part of the Westminster Palace, and the House of Lords occupies the southern end. It is here that the House of Commons makes the laws and the House of Lords discusses and debates them. It is here that the most

important decisions for the country's policy are taken



It is not the only parliament in the United Kingdom. There are other parliaments – there is the Assembly of the States in the Channel Islands and there is the Tynwald in the Isle of Man and the parliaments of Northern Ireland and Scotland. But they deal with domestic matters, and, in the matters

affecting their common interests, the Parliament at Westminster has overriding authority.

The original 14th – century palace was badly damaged by fire in 1834. Between 1840 and 1867, new buildings were put up.

In 1941 the House of Commons was destroyed by bombs, but it was built again after the war in exactly the same style. The House of Lords escaped the 1941 bombing. Now the Palace is a wonderful work of art with hundreds of paintings and sculptures worth seeing.

The Houses of Parliament contains offices, committee rooms, bars, libraries and even some places of residence. The Palace of Westminster, together with Victoria Tower, which houses millions of parliamentary documents, and the Clock Tower, which houses the most famous clock in the world – Big Ben, form an unmistakable architectural complex. But the Towers and the Houses of Parliament are not only associated architecturally, but also in the democratic spirit that rules the political life developed in the House of Commons, for, if Parliament is sitting – British parliamentary debates constitute a political spectacle – the flag flies on top of Victoria Tower during the whole day. If the debates go on during the night – a light burns above Big Ben in the Clock Tower. This light at night and the flag during the day-time is the signal for the people of London that the members of Parliament, each from his own political point of view, are watching over the nation's interests.

The Houses of Parliament can be visited by the public. The entrance is through the

door located at the foot of Victoria Tower and next to the Royal Arch. There are many meeting halls and various parliamentary offices in this famous palace.

Visitors start at the **Royal Gallery** and then go to the House of Lords. On each side of the long hall there are huge wall paintings by the Victorian artist Daniel Maclisse.² They show the battles of Trafalgar and Waterloo. In the battle of Trafalgar the British fleet under Nelson³ broke the line of the Spanish



and French fleets, capturing 20 vessels. In the battle of Waterloo on June 18, 1815, Napoleon⁴ was defeated by the British and Prussian armies under Wellington⁵ and Blucher⁶. From here, visitors proceed towards the Central Corridor – the main reception area, decorated with brightly coloured mosaics. On his way to debates Speaker walks in procession through here with the Mace, the symbol of royal authority. Passing from here visitors arrive at the Antechamber of the Commons. The House of Commons is decorated in a simple style with tiers of green seats. The government sits on one side of the room with the Opposition on the other. There are stripes on the floor in front of each side. The distance between the stripes is the distance between two drawn swords. During the W.W.II the House of Commons was destroyed by German bombs; it was rebuilt after the war.

In the **Robing Room** the monarch puts on the Robes of State and the Imperial State Crown before Opening Parliament. The room has its own throne, and decorations based on ancient tales. The walls are painted with scenes from the story of King Arthur⁸, leader in the war against the Saxons.

At the end of the House of Commons is the Speakers Chair, on the right side of which the members of the parliamentary majority sit. The members of the groups that form the Opposition sit on the left, directly facing the Government benches. The Speaker keeps order during debates.

Another interesting point in the Houses of Parliament is **St.Stephen's Hall** which is decorated with very valuable frescos. From St.Stephen's Hall one reaches Westminster Hall. It's one of the oldest buildings in London. It was completed in 1099 and was the chief survivor of the 1834 fire. It has been used for Royal Christmas feasts, coronation banquets. A terrorist bomb slightly damaged the hall in 1974.

.Big Ben is the huge bell in the clock of St. Stephen's Tower. It may have been named after Sir Benjamin Hall, who supervised the rebuilding of Parliament. The great bell was cast in London foundry in 1858. The question of its name was discussed in Parliament. "Big Ben" is the name of the bell only – not the clock, and not the tower.

People who visit the Houses of Parliament may sit in the Strangers' Gallery looking down into the House of Commons and listen to the debates. The central entrance hall is

usually busy with people coming and going to see the buildings and others wanting to see their Members of Parliament.

Political Parties

The first political parties in Great Britain appeared in Charles II's reign.

One of these parties was a group of MPs who became known as **Whigs**, a rude name for Scottish cattle thieves, but the term Whig was given to those people who wanted to exclude James II from the throne. The Whigs were afraid of an absolute monarchy and of the Catholic faith with which they connected it. They also didn't want to have regular army. The Whigs believed that Parliament should have more power than the king or queen. They believed in religious freedom and political reforms.

The other party, which opposed the Whigs, was nicknamed **Tories**. Tory was originally the name given to Irishmen whose land had been taken away and who had become outlaws, but the term Tory was given to those people who supported James II, the Crown and the Church. In 1670 the Tories were originally a group of politicians who wanted the Roman Catholic James, Duke of York (later James II) to be allowed to become king of England. They were powerful for various periods during the 18th and 19th centuries.

These two parties, the Whigs and the Tories, became the basis of Britain's two-party parliamentary system of government.

Now the British political scene is dominated by a two-party system: one party in power, the other in opposition. They are the Conservative (the Tories) and the Labour Parties (the Whigs).

The Conservative Party is one of the main British political parties. It developed from the old "Tory Party" from the 1830s and is still sometimes called by this name. It's a right-wing party, supporting capitalism and free enterprise (an economic system in which there is open competition in business and trade, and no government control). It is against state control of industry.

The Labour Party, sometimes called the Socialists, was established to represent the interests of workers, and traditionally supported by the trade unions. The Labour Party is

one of the main British political parties. It developed from the old Party “Whigs” in the late 17th century, although it is now not as left-wing as it used to be. It has many supporters, especially among working-class and middle-class people.

Among the other parties one can mention the Liberal Party, the Scottish National Party, the Welsh Nationalist Party, the National Front and Democratic Left.

The Liberal Party developed in the mid 19th century and became the party of social and political reform. It lost support after the rise of the Labour Party in the early 20th century. In the elections of 1983 and 1987 the Liberals achieved some success by joining with the Social Democratic Party to form the Alliance, and the two parties were officially united in 1988. They are now called the Liberal Democratic Party.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to constitute a political spectacle – представлять собой политическое зрелище
- to watch over - охранять
- at the foot – у основания, у подножья
- to capture – захватить
- vessel - судно
- to proceed – отправляться дальше
- the reception area - приёмная
- the Mace – жезл, булава
- the Ante-chamber - вестибюль
- drawn swords – обнажённые мечи
- Temporal – светский, мирской
- secured - охранять
- the Canopy – балдахин, навес
- a cushion – диванная подушка
- the Robes of State – мантия монарха
- feasts – пир, банкет
- to be cast – отливать, лить (металл)
- foundry – литейный цех
- the Gunpowder Plot – пороховой заговор
- the conspirators - заговорщики
- a tunnel - тоннель
- a vault – подвал, погреб
- a barrel - бочка
- to set off - поджечь
- a bonfire - костёр

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: the Houses of Parliament, Westminster Abbey, Buckingham Palace, Victoria Tower, Royal Arch, Trafalgar, Waterloo, Napoleon, Prussian, Wellington, Blucher, Magna Carta, the Cloth of Estate, the Lord Chancellor, Spiritual Side, King Arthur, St. Stephen's Hall, Roman Catholics, Catholicism, Protestantism, Guy Fawkes, the Pope, Henry VIII, Catherine of Aragon, Ann Boleyn, Jane Seymour, Ann of Cleves, Catherine Howard, Catherine Parr, Great Empire.

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. What does constitutional monarchy mean?*
- 2. How is power in Great Britain divided?*
- 3. What does 'parliament' mean? What is the history of English parliament?*
- 4. Is there written constitution in Great Britain now?*
- 5. Where is British Parliament housed?*
- 6. Why is the Houses of Parliament so famous?*
- 7. What are the main historical buildings of the Palace?*
- 8. Can Westminster Palace be visited by the public? Describe the most famous State Rooms and Halls of the Palace?*
- 9. How is the Gunpowder Plot connected with the history of the Parliament?*
- 10. When did the first political parties appear in Great Britain?*
- 11. What political parties became the basis of Britain's parliamentary system of government? What was their politics?*
- 12. What other political parties are there in Great Britain now?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

- 1. Вестминстерский дворец, более известный сегодня как Палата общин и Палата лордов, является самым старым королевским дворцом в Лондоне и одним из самых красивых зданий в мире.*
- 2. Основанный на территории средневекового дворца, и возможно римского Храма, посвященного Аполлону, дворец был центром политической жизни Великобритании с первой половины 11-го века.*
- 3. Места, где сидят члены палаты лордов, красного цвета: раньше красный был самым дорогим цветом, поэтому традиционно использовался самыми богатыми членами общества.*

4. Церемония «Хлопанья дверью» перед лицом Герольдмейстера во время Открытия Парламента является постоянным напоминанием о независимости Палаты общин.

5. Тур по **Биг-Бену** и Элизабет Тауэр доступен только для граждан Великобритании и совершенно бесплатно. Он пользуется большой популярностью у британцев, на него записываются заранее, обычно за полгода.

The Legislative Branch of British Government

The House of Lords and the House of Commons

Power in Great Britain is divided among three branches: the legislative, the executive branch and the judicial branch.

The legislative branch is represented by Parliament which consists of two chambers: **the House of Lords and the House of Commons**. The House of Lords consists of about 1200 members. The youngest of them, irrespective of the age, is usually referred to as “**the Baby of the House**”. The members are usually divided into two groups: “**Lords Spiritual**” (the Archbishop of Canterbury, the Archbishop of York, and 24 bishops of the Church of England) and “**Lords Temporal**”. Lords Temporal consists of hereditary peers of England and Scotland – dukes, marquises, earls and barons – who got their right to sit in the House from their ancestors and transmit their right to their eldest sons, “**life**” **peers**, who earned this title by their distinguished work for the country but they don’t have the right to pass it to their children, and 9 “**law lords**” – members of the **High Court of Justice**.

New peers are created by the monarch on the advice of Prime Minister. As a result, one third of the Lords today are not representatives of hereditary nobility but company directors, bankers, newspaper proprietors and other businessmen.

By custom, the Royal Dukes (members of the Royal Family) don’t attend the sittings of the House.

The Lords don't depend on elections and can avoid "*political football*" typical for the House of Commons. The Lords are often looked upon as the positive conservative force that helps Britain to avoid radical changes in politics.

The House of Lords sits for about 140 days in each session. The Lords have a right to suggest a bill. But, by tradition, the Lords never use the right, limiting their legislative activities by discussions and approvals of the bills prepared and passed by the House of Commons. Fifty years ago the Lords had a right of veto; they could prevent a bill from becoming a law. Now they have no right to veto a bill but can delay its becoming a law for a period of one year. There is one exception here – the Lords cannot hold up any "Money Bill", i.e. the bill dealing with taxation.

So the Lords don't make laws: they can only approve the laws made by the Commons. But the Lords have more power than the Commons, because the High Court of Justice is a part of this chamber. The head of this important body is the presiding officer of the House – **Lord Chancellor** himself. The modern House of Lords is a forum for public discussion. It's the place where proposals for new laws are discussed in great detail - much more detail than the busy Commons has time for – and in this way irregularities in these proposals can be removed before they become law. It's argued, the Lords is a check on a government, its control of the Commons could possibly become too dictatorial. Most people agree that having two Houses of Parliament is a good idea and that House of Lords could have more useful function (without the hereditary element). However, at this time, nobody can agree on what would be the best way to reform the composition of the House of Lords and so it remains as a fascinating (but valuable) anachronism in a modern state.

The House of Lords is a chamber in rich tones of red and gold. The walls are lined with painting and with statues of the barons who secured the Magna Carta from King John in 1215. At the south end of the chamber is the gilded Royal Throne which stands opposite the chair of the presiding officer of the chamber – Lord Chancellor. This chair is known as **the Woolsack** – a cushion stuffed with wool from England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. This tradition of stuffing the chair of Lord Chancellor with wool dates back to the days of **King Edward III** (14th century), when wool was the main article of English

export. Now it symbolizes what was once England's chief source of wealth. **The Lord Chancellor** takes his place to preside over the sittings as the Speaker of the House of Lords.



The Canopy above the Throne represents the Cloth of Estate, to which Lords bow on entering. When the House is sitting, the eldest sons of the Peers, Bishops, who are not members of the House, Privy Councillors (тайные советники) and certain other distinguished persons may sit on the steps of the throne.

The benches on the left are for supporters of the Government, and those on the right for supporters of the Opposition. The Liberal and Social Democrat Peers normally occupy the benches on the right nearest the Woolsack. The leading members of each party traditionally sit on the front benches. The Government side of the House, where the Leader of the House and Ministers of the Crown sit is known as the “**Spiritual Side**” and the Opposition side as the “**Temporal Side**”.

There are 651 members in **the House of Commons** (most of them are professional politicians, lawyers, etc.). During important debates they remain in the House, and the sittings may go on until late at night. Members of the House of Commons are elected for five years.

Important members in the House of Commons are **the Speaker** and the so-called party **whips**. (party organizers who arrange each day programme in Parliament and tell members when they must attend debates).

The Speaker is the **Chairman** or presiding officer of the House of Commons. He is elected at the beginning of each new Parliament. He cannot debate or vote with other members unless the voting is equal, in which case he votes with Government.

The party that wins the most seats in a general election forms the government and its leader becomes **the Prime Minister**, the head of the government. At present the Prime

Minister of Britain is **David Cameron**, the leader of the Labour Party. He or she usually takes policy decisions with the agreement of the **Cabinet of Ministers**. The Power of the Cabinet, in its turn, is controlled by the Parliament, for no bill can become law until it is passed by an Act of Parliament. If the majority of MPs is for the bill it is sent to **the House of Lords** for discussion. When the Lords agree, the bill is taken to the Queen for the Royal Assent. The Queen signs, and **the Great Seal** is fixed. The bill becomes **an Act of Parliament** and part of **the Law of Land**.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- symbolic occasions – символические мероприятия
- chamber, or house - палата
- landowners - землевладельцы
- In the course of – в течение
- nobles - знать
- the Great Charter – Великая Хартия
- Acts of Parliament – закон, постановление парламента
- violent changes – сильные, насильственные перемены
- approval - одобрение
- democracy – демократическое государство
- to vote - голосовать
- compulsory - обязательный
- right –wing- правое (реакционное) крыло политической партии
- left-wing – левое крыло политической партии
- Royal Assent – королевская санкция (парламентского законопроекта)
- the Great Seal – большая государственная печать
- hereditary – передаваемый по наследству
- “life” peer – пожизненное звание лорда (дающееся на всю жизнь)
- lord spiritual – духовный, церковный представитель палаты лордов
- civil servant – служащий государственного учреждения
- The Lord Chancellor – лорд-канцлер (глава судебного ведомства и верховный судья Англии, председатель палаты лордов и одного из отделений верховного суда)
- Woolsack – набитая шерстью подушка, на которой сидит лорд-канцлер в палате лордов
- procedure - процедура
- Rod - жезл
- whip – парламентский партийный организатор

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. Is monarchy absolute or constitutional in Great Britain?*
- 2. How does the monarch act in modern Great Britain?*
- 3. Why is the British monarchy a very popular institution?*
- 4. What are the main functions of the monarch nowadays?*
- 5. Describe the ceremony of the State Opening of Parliament?*
- 6. What are the main ranks in Great Britain?*
- 7. What are the main Orders in Great Britain?*
- 8. What are the main functions of the House of Lords?*
- 9. Who are the main representatives of the House of Lords?*
- 10. Describe the interior of the House of Lords?*
- 11. What are the main functions of the House of Commons?*
- 12. Who are the main representatives of the House of Commons?*
- 10. Describe the interior of the House of Commons?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

- 1. Нельзя заседать в палате лордов лицам младше 21 года, а также не являющимся гражданами Содружества или Ирландии.*
- 2. Раньше женщины не могли заседать в палате лордов, даже если они были по праву пэрами. После принятия Закона о палате лордов 1999, наследуемые пэрессы смогли проходить в верхнюю палату. Все женщины палаты лордов — светские леди.*
- 3. Палата лордов известна своей колоритной достопримечательностью — мешком с шерстью. Это обитый красным сукном пуф с шерстью, на котором сидит во время заседаний лорд-канцлер. Традицию около шести веков назад ввел Эдуард III с целью напоминания всем о важном значении для Королевства этого товара.*
- 4. Зарплату английские лорды не получают, за исключением судей, спикера и тех, кто одновременно входит и в состав кабинета министров. Однако они имеют право на компенсацию расходов за время, которое находились на заседаниях. В среднем содержание одного лорда в год обходится в 149 тысяч фунтов стерлингов.*

Lesson 9

MONARCHY AS A SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT CORONATION CEREMONY AND ROYAL REGALIA



The Value of the Monarchy



The monarchy hasn't always been popular but it survived the republican sentiments, because the monarchy gives British people a symbol of continuity and a harmless outlet for the expression of national pride. Public have been encouraged to look up to the Royal family as a model of Christian family life.

For several centuries the monarch personally had had the supreme executive, legislative and judicial power, but with the growth of Parliament and the courts the direct exercise of these functions progressively decreased. Many people change their attitude to the monarchy. There are

many anti-royalist opinions. The Queen has recently been reported to be the richest woman in the world. People think she must pay taxes on her private income. But some Conservative MPs (strong supporters of the monarchy) protested at how much the Royal family was costing the country. But **Civil list** payments (Civil list is the money which the Queen and some of her relatives get from parliament each year for public duties.) to some members of the Royal family were stopped.

The Role of the Monarchy

Until the end of the 17th century, British monarchs were executive monarchs – that is, they had the right to make and pass legislation. Since the beginning of the 18th century, the monarch has become a constitutional monarch, which means that he or she is bound by rules and conventions and remains politically impartial.

On almost all matters he or she acts on the advice of ministers. While acting constitutionally, the Sovereign retains an important political role as Head of State, formally appointing prime ministers, approving certain legislation and bestowing honours.

The Queen also has important roles to play in other organizations, including the Armed Forces and the Church of England. The Queen acts as a focus for national unity, presiding at ceremonial occasions and representing Britain around the world.

The monarch is the personal embodiment of the government of the country. Clear separation between the symbol of government (the Queen) and the actual government (the ministers) doesn't threaten the stability of the country as a whole. Other countries without a monarch have to use something else as the symbol of the country. In the USA, for example, one of these is its flag, and to damage the flag in any way is actually a criminal offence.

The monarch has a very practical role to play. By being a figurehead and representing the country, Queen Elizabeth II can perform the ceremonial duties which heads of state often have to spend their time on. This way the real government has more time to get on with the actual job of running the country.

Coronation Ceremony and Royal Regalia

The Coronation is the ceremony that takes place at Westminster Abbey when a new British king or queen is crowned. After a religious ceremony, they are given the crown and other items that represent power and wealth, and become officially king or queen. The Coronation is always marked by a public holiday and celebrations all over the country. Since the coronation of Queen Victoria **coronation mugs** have been made as souvenirs and some people like to collect them. Edward VIII coronation mugs are very rare because the coronation didn't take place.

Regalia is the name given to the emblems of visible marks of royalty, which from Biblical times, have been used during the religious ceremonies marking the accessions of kings and emperors to their high position of state. Such religious ceremonies have fallen into disuse in many of the countries where they were formerly practiced; but in the United Kingdom they still take place, and during the last coronation ceremony Queen Elizabeth II was invested with regalia as her ancestors had been invested from the days of the Norman conquest and before.

Almost the whole of the present regalia was made for the coronation of King



Charles II. Since the coronation of King Charles II the regalia have been kept in the Tower of London under the guardianship of the Keeper of the Jewel House.

The regalia play an important part in the ritual

of the coronation ceremony, for each item is symbolic.

The following items of the regalia are borne in procession to the altar before the actual service begins:

- **St Edward's Crown**

- **the Imperial State Crown**
- **the Orb**
- **the Sceptre with the Cross**
- **the Sceptre with the Dove**
- **the Jewelled State Sword**
- **the Great Sword of State**
- **the Swords of Justice**
- **the Sword of Mercy**
- **the Golden Spurs**
- **the Armills or Bracelets**
- **the Coronation Ring**
- **the Ampulla and the anointing Spoon**

They are placed upon the altar by the officiating dignitaries of the Church, and, with the exception of four of the Swords, each is in turn presented to the Sovereign before he is enthroned.

The Ampulla and the anointing Spoon

The Ampulla and the Spoon are used for the anointing, which follows the formal Recognition of the Sovereign by his people and his taking of the Coronation Oath. The anointing ceremony is the most solemn moment of the whole coronation, for it is then that the Sovereign is hallowed and consecrated to his task. Holy oil is poured from the Ampulla into the anointing Spoon and is applied by the officiating bishop or archbishop to the Sovereign's head, breast and palms.

The Ampulla is in the form of a hollow gold vessel shaped like an eagle, with outstretched wings standing on a pedestal. It is nine inches in height and the weight is about ten ounces of gold. The neck unscrews, permitting the



vessel to be filled with oil, and there is a hole in the break through which the oil may be poured.

The anointing Spoon is made of heavily gilded silver. The handle is richly ornamented and set with pearls. The Spoon, probably dating from the thirteenth century, is thus the oldest element of the Regalia.

The Spurs

When the Sovereign has been anointed, the Lord Chamberlain touches his heels with the Golden Spurs, which are symbols of knightly chivalry. A Queen Regnant touches the Spurs with her hand. The Spurs are made of solid gold, richly chased.

The Swords

Five Swords are used during the coronation. After the Spurs have been returned to the altar, the Archbishop of Canterbury takes **the Jewelled State Sword** from the Keeper of the Jewel House, and accompanied by the Archbishop of York and Bishops of London and Winchester and other bishops assisting, he, approaches the Sovereign and delivers the Sword into his or her right hand. The Sword is then girt about the Sovereign accompanied by this exhortation: *“With this sword do justice, stop the growth of iniquity, protect the Holy Church of God, help to defend widows and orphans, restore the things that are gone to decay, maintain the things that are restored, punish and reform what is amiss and confirm what is in good order: doing these things you may be glorious in all virtue; and so faithfully serve our Lord Jesus Christ in this life that you may reign for ever with Him in the life which is to come”*. The Sword is then handed to the Archbishop of Canterbury by the Sovereign himself, who shows by this act that he places his Sword at the service of the Church.

The Jewelled State Sword was made for the coronation of King George IV and is the most elaborate and brilliant of the various Swords which belong to the regalia. Its jewels are in the shapes of the floral symbols of the United Kingdom: the rose for England, the thistle for Scotland, and the shamrock for Ireland. It is the only sword actually presented to the Sovereign during the Coronation; the others are merely borne in front of the Sovereign. The Sword of State is the largest sword in the collection, and is

borne in front of the Monarch by the Lord Great Chamberlain both at the coronation and at the State Opening of Parliament.

The Armills

After being girt with the Sword the Sovereign is invested with the Armills and Bracelets. They were made by the Crown Jewellers of pure gold, and are decorated only by two narrow bands of engraving and a single Tudor rose, which serves as a clasp. The **Armills** symbolize sincerity and wisdom. Upon Queen Elizabeth II's coronation, a new set of gold armills was produced and presented on the behalf of various Commonwealth governments, namely: the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, Pakistan, Ceylon, and Southern Rhodesia.

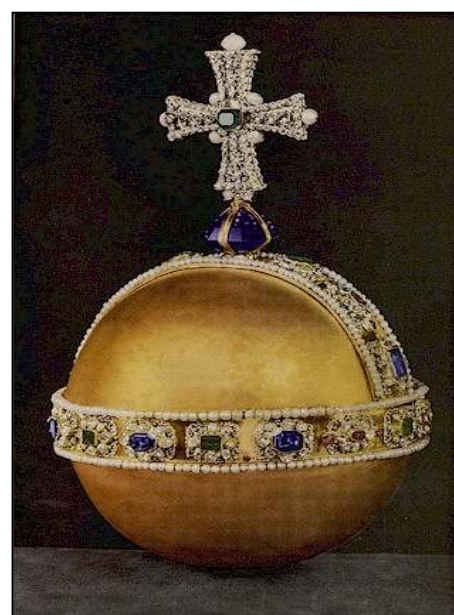
The Orb

Following investiture with the Armills, the Sovereign is clothed with garments which signify the religious aspect of kingship. When the Sovereign is robed he is seated in **King Edward's Chair**, and the King's Orb or **Orb of England** is brought and placed in his right hand.

The Orb, a golden globe six inches in diameter surmounted by a great amethyst upon which is the Cross, is the symbol of independent sovereignty under the Cross, representing the Sovereign's role as **Defender of the Faith**, and the symbol of the world ruled by Christianity. The

Sovereign's Orb is a hollow golden sphere made in 1661. There is a band of jewels running along the centre, and a half-band on the top hemisphere. For a part of the coronation, it is borne in the Sovereign's left hand. The Orb also form part of this priceless and unique collection.

The Coronation Ring



When the Orb has been returned to the altar the Coronation Ring - "*the ensign of kingly dignity*" – is placed on the fourth finger of the Sovereign's right hand. The Ring is sometimes called "*the Wedding Ring of England*", and is set with a sapphire in a circle of diamonds surmounted with St George's Cross in rubies.

The Ring was made for **William IV's** coronation in 1831. Previously, each Sovereign received a new ring to symbolise their "marriage" to the nation, though no new rings have been used since 1831.

The Sceptres

The presentation of the Sceptres follows upon the presentation of the Ring. **The Sceptre with the Cross** signifies royal power and justice, and **the Sceptre with the Dove** signifies equity and mercy. The first Sceptre was made of gold and richly jeweled. It contains a great heart-shaped diamond, which is the largest of the Stars of Africa cut from the Cullinan diamond and

was inserted at the order of King Edward VII. The jewel above the Star of Africa is an amethyst in the shape of an orb, over which is a diamond and emerald cross. During the coronation, the monarch bears the Sceptre with the Cross in the right hand.



Sovereign holds both Sceptres, he or she is crowned with St. Edward's Crown.

St Edward's Crown

The culminating point of the investiture is the actual crowning ceremony, at which St Edward's Crown is placed upon the head of the Sovereign. St Edward's Crown was made in 1661. It is made of gold set with diamonds, rubies, sapphires, emeralds and pearls. Above the band are alternating crosses and fleurs-de-lis, and over these stretch two complete arches symbolizing the heredity and independence of the monarchy. Decorating the edges of the arches are rows of pearls. St Edward's Crown is very heavy – it weighs over 2,3 kilos – and therefore it rests upon the head of the Sovereign for only a few moments. It's later exchanged for the lighter Imperial Crown of State.



The Imperial Crown of State



The Imperial Crown of State is the crown worn by the Sovereign upon all state occasions. It was made in 1937 for King George VI, and was similar to the one made in 1838 for Queen Victoria. The present Crown has two complete arches which pass from front to back and from side to side, and on the top is the central orb surmounted by a jeweled cross. The wide jewelled base of the Crown has set in its centre the second "Star of Africa". Above the jeweled band are alternating gem-studded crosses and fleurs-de-lis. The central stone of the central cross is the famous ruby of "the Black Prince" which was first heard in 1367, when it was already several hundred years old. At the point of intersection of the two arches, on the top of the Crown, hang four large pearls, once the earrings of Queen Elizabeth I; and in the jeweled cross surmounting the orb is King Edward the Confessor's sapphire. In all, the Imperial State Crown contains 2,783 diamonds, 277 pearls, 16 sapphires, 11 emeralds and 4 rubies. It's worn after the

conclusion of the Coronation ceremony when the monarch leaves Westminster Abbey, and also at the annual State Opening of Parliament.

The Collection of Crown Jewels contains various crowns, some of which are used by every Sovereign, others being made personally for Sovereigns or for Queens Consort. Typically the Crown of a King has a slightly pointed arched top, while that of a Queen has a slightly bowed top.

The Crown Jewels have been kept at the **Tower of London** since 1303 after they were stolen from Westminster Abbey. It is thought that most, if not all, were recovered shortly afterwards. After the coronation of Charles II, they were locked away and shown for a viewing fee paid to a custodian. However, this arrangement ended when Colonel Thomas Blood stole the Crown Jewels after having bound and gagged the custodian. Thereafter, the Crown Jewels were kept in a part of the Tower known as Jewel House, where armed guards defend them. They were temporarily taken out of the Tower in the Second World War. It was reported that they were secretly kept in the basement vaults of the Sun Life Insurance company in Montreal, Canada, during World War II, along with the gold bullion of the Bank of England. However it has also been said that they were kept in the Round Tower of Windsor Castle, or the Fort Knox Bullion Depository.

Coronation Chair



This oak Chair was made for King Edward I by Master Walter of Durham. It was designed to hold an ancient Stone of Scone seized from the Scots in 1296. For Coronation the Chair is moved to a position in the Sanctuary. Since 1308 it has been used at the Coronation of every Sovereign. Only two, Edward V and Edward VIII, were never crowned.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- divine – божественный, святой, священный
- descent – происхождение
- deification – культ, обожествление
- rigid – жёсткий, суровый
- provision – положение
- incursion – вторжение, вмешательство
- regalia – регалии (традиционные символы королевской власти)
- tug – кружка
- ampulla – ампула, сосуд
- to anoint – совершать помазание
- outstretched – развёрнутый
- gilded – позолоченный
- spur – шпора
- solid gold – чистое золото
- chase – преследовать
- to girt - окаймлять; охватывать
- exhortation – призыв
- armills - браслеты
- orb – держава
- sceptre – скипетр
- investiture – облачение, одеяние
- ruby – рубин
- sapphire – сапфир
- emerald – изумруд
- pearl – жемчуг
- custodian – хранитель
- sanctuary – святилище, святая святых, алтарь

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Give the definition of the word “monarchy”?
2. What are the main types of monarchy?
3. What are the main features and historical periods of absolute monarchy?
4. Who are the most remarkable representatives of absolute monarchy?
5. What are the main features of constitutional monarchy?

6. *Is monarchy in Britain constitutional or absolute?*
7. *What is the main role of the monarchy?*
8. *What is the main value of the monarchy?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. *Коронация в Англии не имеет никакого юридического или конституционного значения, поскольку король или королева становятся полноправными монархами с момента смерти его или ее предшественника.*
2. *Коронация – это прежде всего религиозное событие, это служба, на которой король или королева дают клятву посвятить жизнь служению своему народу, поэтому главу государства в Великобритании не приводит к присяге верховный судья или, тем более, какой-то политик. Коронацию всегда проводили самые высокопоставленные представители Англиканской церкви.*
3. *Присяга и священный смысл всего события являются основными причинами, почему королева Елизавета II никогда добровольно не отречется от престола.*
4. *Многие детали церемонии коронации почти не изменились со времен первой коронации в стенах аббатства, когда на Рождество 1066 года короновали Вильгельма Завоевателя.*
5. *60 лет спустя ясно, что Англиканской церкви придется стать более гостеприимной. Это значит, что следующая коронация должна будет лучше отражать религиозное разнообразие современного британского общества.*

LESSON 10

OUTSTANDING POLITICIANS OF GREAT BRITAIN

Outstanding British Politicians

Sir Robert Walpole

(1676-1745)

Sir Robert Walpole was a British politician and Britain's first Prime Minister. He



served the longest time of any prime minister and was the first to live at "Number 10 Downing Street". His periods in power were times of peace and economic success for the country, although Walpole himself was accused of dishonest behaviour in government. He was made an earl in 1742.

Winston Churchill

(1874-1965)

Winston Churchill was a politician who is remembered as one of Britain's greatest statesmen. He is best known for his courageous leadership as **Prime Minister** during World War II.

He was born on November 30, 1874. He was the eldest son of aristocrat and Conservative politician Lord Randolph Churchill and his American wife Jennie.

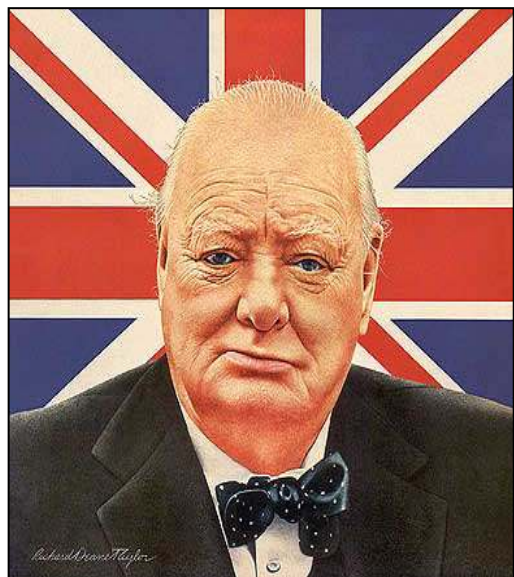
He graduated from **the Royal Military College** in Sandhurst. As a young man he served as a soldier in India and Egypt. Then he was a war correspondent in South Africa where he was captured during the **Boer War**. After his escape he joined the Conservative Party. Since then he was taking an active part in Britain's political life, occupying a number of important posts in the government. He was a member of Parliament from 1900 to 1965 for five different constituencies. He started as a Conservative, changed to the Liberal Party in 1904 and back to the Conservative Party in 1925. Between 1906 and 1929

he held many important positions in government, but went against the general feeling of his day in opposing Hitler's moves to increase Germany's supplies of weapons.

When Neville Chamberlain was forced to resign in 1940, Churchill became Prime Minister and Minister of Defence.

During the Second World War he successfully secured military aid and moral support from the United States. He travelled endlessly during the war, establishing close ties with the leaders of other nations and co-ordinated a military strategy which finally brought about Hitler's defeat.

His radio speeches during World War II gave the British people a strong determination to win the war especially at times of great crisis. His tireless efforts gained



admiration from all over the world. But the Conservative Party, led by Churchill, lost the election of 1945, but he became Prime Minister again from 1951 to 1955 when he retired, aged 80 because of ill health.

He was made a Knight in 1953. He spent most of his last years writing and painting. He wrote the book "The History of the English-speaking people". In recognition of his historical studies he was given **the Nobel Prize for Literature** in 1953.

He was famous for smoking a large cigar, and making a "V-sign for 'victory'". He was often referred to simply as 'Winnie' and is remembered with great affection in both Britain and the US. In 1963 Congress made him an honorary American citizen.

Sir Winston Churchill died in 1965 at the age of 90. His death marked the end of an era in British history.

Margaret Thatcher

(1925 - 2013)

Margaret Thatcher was a British Conservative politician who became Britain's first woman in European history prime minister and was one of the longest serving British prime ministers of the 20th century.



Margaret Thatcher is the second daughter of a grocer and dressmaker. She was born on October 13, 1925, in Lincolnshire, England. She was a clever child. Early in life she decided to become a member of Parliament. She was educated at **Somerville College** and at **Oxford University**. She earned a 'master of arts degree' from Oxford in 1950 and worked for a short time as a research chemist. In 1950 she married Denis Thatcher, a director of a paint firm. After

her marriage she specialized in tax law.

She became a member of Parliament in 1959. Because of her debating skills she soon became prominent among other politicians. In 1970 she became a member of the Cabinet where she was made Secretary of State for education and science. In 1974 she became the leader of the Conservative Party. When the Conservative Party won a decisive victory in the 1979 general elections, Thatcher became Prime Minister. As Prime Minister she believed that the state shouldn't interfere in business, and privatized many industries that were owned by the state. She reduced the power of the trade unions by a series of laws. She wanted people not to rely on the welfare state, and instead to pay for their own health care, education and pensions.

People were often critical of Mrs Thatcher's policies and blamed her for the decline of many British industries and high unemployment. However she was seen as a very determined and patriotic Prime Minister, and she became especially popular after the 'Falklands War'². Because of this she was often referred to as the '**Iron Lady**'.

During the third term Thatcher continued the 'Thatcher revolution' by returning education, health care and housing to private control.

After winning three general elections, she was forced to resign in 1991 by members of her own party who criticized her attitude to the European Union. She was succeeded as Prime Minister by **John Major**. She was made a life peer in 1992.

M. Thatcher died on the 8th of April, 2013 in London.

Margaret Thatcher is certainly an outstanding figure in Britain's political life. According to political observers, she brought long-needed changes to British government and society.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- executive - исполнительный
- legislative, legislature – законодательный; законодательная власть
- to overlap – частично покрывать
- civil servants – служащие государственного учреждения
- to recall – вызывать, отзывать
- application – просьба, заявление
- Statutory Boards – установленное правление, руководство
- patronage – покровительство, шефство
- to confer honours – даровать / жаловать почести
- to appeal to the public – обращаться к общественности
- convention – собрание, съезд / соглашения, договорённость
- the Privy Council – тайный совет
- the Chancellor – канцлер, премьер-министр, главный судья
- the Treasurer - казначей
- judiciary institution – судебное учреждение, ведомство
- to entitle – озаглавить, жаловать титул, величать
- unanimously - единогласно
- to resign – уходить в отставку
- reshuffle – переставлять, перегруппировывать
- the Home Department – Министерство Внутренних дел
- Chancellor of the Exchequer – Министр Финансов

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

1. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What is the main function of the executive branch of the government?
2. Where is the residence of the Prime Minister?
3. Who appoints Prime Minister? How does Prime Minister act?
4. What is the Cabinet? Who are the main members of the Cabinet? How are they chosen?

5. *What are the main reasons for a modern PM's dominance?*
6. *What are the main functions of the Privy Council?*
7. *What does 'shadow cabinet' mean? What are the main functions of this cabinet?*
8. *Why did Sir William Walpole become outstanding British politician?*
9. *Why is Winston Churchill remembered as one of Britain's greatest statesmen?*
10. *Why is M/ Thatcher an outstanding figure in Britain's political life?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

Резиденция премьер-министров Великобритании

1. У премьер-министра нет ключей к Downing №10, но всегда есть кто-то на дежурстве, чтобы впустить его.
2. В зале резиденции стоят высокие **часы с маятником**, сделанные Бенсоном. Их перезвоны раздражали Уинстона Черчилля так, что ему отключили музыкальное оборудование.
3. Рядом с дверью находится **сундук** для путешественника **герцога Веллингтона**. Считается, что этот сундук находился с Веллингтоном в сражении при Ватерлоо в 1815 году.
4. Интерьер парадной лестницы оформлен портретами. Картины, изображающие каждого премьер-министра Великобритании, вывешены на стенах в хронологическом порядке, новые должностные лица наверху, общие фотографии членов прошлых Кабинетов и Имперских Конференций внизу.
5. Уинстон Черчилль — единственный премьер-министр, два портрета которого, висят на стенах лестницы.
6. **Белая гостиная** — одна из комнат резиденции, которая использовалась до середины двадцатого века как частные покои премьер-министра. В ней находятся работы одного из самых любимых английских пейзажистов девятнадцатого века, Дж М В Тернера. Интерьер гостиной часто используется в качестве фона для телевизионных интервью и конференц-зала.
7. Потолок Белой гостиной выполнен в стиле загородного дома 18-го века. Он включает четыре символа Британских островов — нарцисс, роза, трилистник и чертополох.
8. **Овальный стол** был разработан с целью позволить премьер-министру видеть всех. Никто не сидит непосредственно напротив премьер-министра. Члены Кабинета министров рассаживаются по старшинству на места, обозначенные табличкой.
9. Определённое пространство, занимает библиотека. Уходящие в отставку премьер-министры и члены правительства жертвуют в нее книги. Эта традиция была начата в 1935 году.

10. Комната с колоннами является самой большой из трех гостиных в резиденции и используется, для подписания международных соглашений или во время больших приемов.

11. Жемчужиной интерьера Колонной комнаты является поразительный персидский ковер, точная копия ковра 16-го века, который хранится в Музее Виктории и Альберта.

12. Комната с колоннами, как говорят, посещается призраком. Несколько сотрудников резиденции видели или слышали «леди» - женщину, одетую в длинное платье и жемчуга.

13. Государственная парадная столовая построена в 1827 году. Эта самая большая комната в резиденции, высотой в два этажа с дубовыми панелями Она используется для устройства официальных обедов во время приема иностранных делегаций и пресс-конференций премьер-министра.

PART III

UNIT II

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Lesson 1

PORTRAIT OF THE USA

National Symbols

National Parks

Official name: the United States of America (the USA).

Status: a federal republic, a union of 50 states.

Capital: Washington, D.C.

Motto: 'In God we trust.'

Nationality: American.

Population: 276 000 000

Languages: English is the official and predominant language, Spanish is the preferred language of minorities in New York City, Florida and along the Mexican border. Other minority languages include Italian, German, Polish, Yiddish, Russian, American Indian, Chinese and Japanese.

Location: The United States proper (excluding Hawaii and Alaska) stretches across North America from the Atlantic Ocean in the east to the Pacific Ocean in the west, from Canada in the north to Mexico, the Gulf Mexico, and the Gulf of California in the south.

Ethnic composition: The nation's ethnic diversity is chiefly due to large-scale immigration, most of which took place before 1920. Whites comprise about 88 per cent of the population, Negroes 11 per cent, and other races the remaining one per cent. Though mainly European and African in origin, Americans are derived from nearly all races and nations, including Chinese, Arab, Polynesian, Eskimo.

Over many generations, a definite American nationality has developed, superficially identifiable by speech and manners.

Head of State and Government: President, elected for four years.

Legislative body: Congress, consisting of the Senate and the House of Representatives.

Local government: 50 states, each with a popularly elected governor and legislature.

There are two main political parties in the USA: the Democratic Party (symbolized by a ‘donkey’) and the Republican Party (its symbol is an ‘elephant’)

National Symbols

The U.S. National Anthem

Congress adopted ‘the Star-Spangled Banner’ as the national anthem in 1931. The poem was written in September 1814 when British troops invaded Washington and set on fire the Capitol.

In 1917, Irving Berlin wrote ‘God Bless America’ for his Army musical, but didn’t use it. In 20 years the popular singer Kate Smith asked him for a patriotic song for a national radio broadcast in 1938. It became an overnight sensation! Many people suggested that it should be a national anthem. Over the years, it has been considered America’s unofficial anthem, since ‘the Star-Spangled Banner’ has difficult lyrics and a difficult tune.

The National Flag



The 50-star flag of the United States was raised for the first time officially at 12.00 a.m. on July 4, 1960, at Fort McHenry National Monument in Baltimore.

Poets, patriots and composers have given different names to the National Flag: **Old Glory, the Star-Spangled Banner.** ‘**The Stars and Stripes**’ is the most popular name for the National Flag of the US.

After the Declaration of Independence on July 4, 1776, the Continental Congress resolved on June 1777 that ‘the flag of the US’ be 13 stripes alternate red and white and 13 stars white in a blue field. **Red** is for courage, **white** for purity and innocence and **blue** for vigilance and justice. The stripes stand for 13 original colonies. There is no particular basis for assigning each star to a particular state. Presidential orders fixed the positions of the stars in 1912, when New Mexico and Arisona were admitted to the Union states, the 49th for Alaska and the 50th star had been added for Hawaii in 1960.

The U.S. flag flies over the White House whether or not the President is in Washington, D.C. The U.S. flag should be flown on legal public holidays and other special days.

Great Seal



On July 4, 1776, **Benjamin Franklin, John Adams,** and **Thomas Jefferson** were given the task of creating a seal for the United States of America. The delegates of the Constitutional Convention believed an emblem and national coat of arms would declare to the world that the U.S. was an independent nation and had a free people with high hopes for the future.

The Great Seal was finalized and approved six years later on June 20, 1782. The seal reflects the beliefs and values that the Founding Fathers wanted to pass on to their descendants.

In the center of the seal is a bald eagle, the national bird. It holds in its beak a scroll inscribed *E pluribus unum*, which is Latin meaning "out of many, one" and stands for one nation that was created from 13 colonies. In one claw is an olive branch, while the other holds a bundle of thirteen arrows. The olive branch and arrows "denote the power of peace and war."

A shield with thirteen red and white stripes covers the eagle's breast. The shield is supported solely by the American eagle to denote that Americans should rely on their own virtue. The red and white stripes of the shield represent the states united under and supporting the blue, representing the president and Congress. The color white signifies purity; red - bravery; and blue - justice. Above the eagle's head is a cloud surrounding a blue field containing thirteen stars, which forms a constellation. The constellation denotes that a new state is taking its place among other nations.

Bald Eagle

The bald eagle is the national bird of the United States. This magnificent bird can be



found on many things in the United States. Since ancient times eagles have been a sign of power. Eagles have great size and strength, and because of this, many have claimed this bird as their emblem and symbol. When it came to choosing a national bird for America after the Revolutionary War, many wanted this bird to be chosen to show that the nation was great and powerful. This majestic bird can only be found soaring in North

America.

But, not all in Congress wanted this bird as theirs. Benjamin Franklin proposed that the turkey be the national bird, because it was a true native of the country. But in 1782 the

Founding Fathers chose the bald eagle as the national bird because it symbolizes strength, courage, freedom, and immortality.

The term "bald" does not mean that this bird lacks feathers. Instead, it comes from the word 'piebald', an old word, meaning "marked with white." The head of the adult bird is white and was called 'bald' by the people of England who first settled in America. To them 'bald' meant 'white', not hairless. This bird also has white tail feathers.

Unfortunately, this magnificent bird faced near extinction. When Europeans first arrived on the North American continent in the 1600's, there were an estimated 25,000 to 50,000 bald eagles, but populations dropped for many reasons. Many eagles were captured for getting too close to poultry or fishing nets; some were captured for falconry; and many eagles were poisoned by pesticides. In 1967, the bald eagle was included on the Threatened and Endangered Species List. Federal laws, such as the Bald Eagle Protection Act, protect the bald eagle and have led to the recovery of bald eagle populations.



Liberty Bell

On July 8, 1776, a bell rang out to announce the first reading of the Declaration of Independence to the people of Philadelphia. It became then, and is still, a symbol of American Independence, a symbol of freedom in the United States and the world.

Cast in London, England in 1752, the Liberty Bell weighs about 2,000 pounds and is made mostly of copper and tin. There is an inscription around the bell's crown: 'Proclaim Liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.'

Shortly after its arrival in Philadelphia, the Bell cracked and was recast. As tradition, the bell was rung on every July 4th and on every state occasion until 1846. By

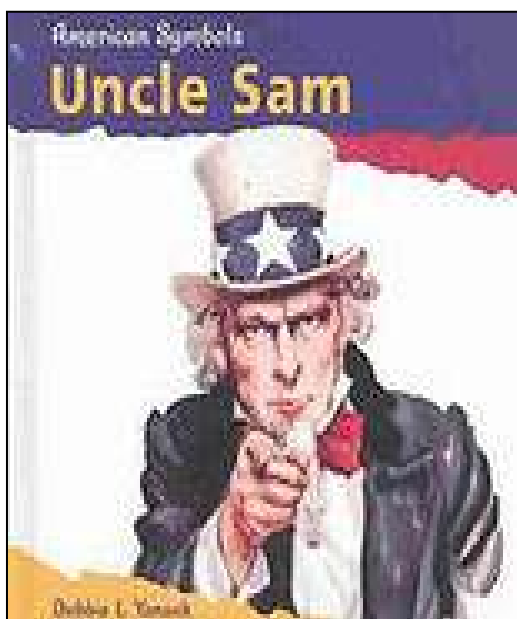
1846, a new crack had formed that affected the sound of the bell. The last time the bell rang was on February 23, 1846 for George Washington's birthday celebration.

The bell was known by several names: **the Bell of the Revolution** and **Old Independence, Liberty Bell**.

Today, the Liberty Bell hangs in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania at the National Park Service Liberty Bell Center on 6th Street, between Market and Chestnut Streets for all to see.

Uncle Sam

Uncle Sam, a figure symbolizing the United States, is portrayed as a tall, white-haired man with a goatee. He is often dressed in red, white, and blue, and wears a top hat. The exact origins of Uncle Sam as a symbol for the United States are unknown. But the most widely accepted theory is that Uncle Sam was named after Samuel Wilson.



Samuel Wilson was born in Arlington, Massachusetts in 1766. He fought in the Revolutionary War with his father and brothers. When the War was over, he moved to Troy, New York. During the War of 1812, Samuel Wilson was a businessman. He supplied the U.S. Army with beef in barrels. The barrels were labeled "U.S." When asked what the initials stood for, one of Wilson's workers said it stood for Uncle Sam Wilson. The suggestion that the meat shipments came from "Uncle Sam" led to the idea that Uncle Sam symbolized the Federal Government and the association stuck. In 1961, Congress passed a resolution that recognized Samuel Wilson as the inspiration for the symbol Uncle Sam.

The story gained popularity when it was printed in New York City Newspaper. But Sam Wilson looked nothing like the Uncle Sam pictured above. Uncle Sam's traditional appearance, with a white goatee and star-spangled suit, is an invention of artists and

political cartoonists. One of these political cartoonists was named Thomas Nast. Nast produced many of the earliest cartoons of Uncle Sam.

The most famous picture of Uncle Sam appeared on an Army recruiting poster. The poster was designed in World War I and was used again in World War II. The caption reads "I Want You for U.S. Army."

After the war, Uncle Sam became the symbol of the nation. Uncle Sam is a United States' symbol that is recognized throughout the world. He has appeared in magazines, newspapers, and on posters for the last 150 years.

The Rose

The rose, said to be about 35 million years old, has been used as a symbol of love, beauty, war, and politics throughout the world. The flowers are generally red, pink, white, or yellow and grow naturally throughout North America. The rose became the official flower of the United States in 1986.

Statue of Liberty

Located on Liberty Island in New York, near Ellis Island, the Statue of Liberty symbolizes freedom throughout the world. It was certainly that for millions of immigrants



who came to America in the 19th-20th centuries (1892 - 1954) seeking refuge, freedom, and opportunity. The Statue of Liberty's formal name is **Liberty Enlightening the World**.

The Statue was actually a gift from the people of France. Made of copper sheets with an iron framework, the statue depicts a woman escaping the chains of tyranny, which lie at her feet. Her right hand holds a burning torch that represents liberty. The torch lights up at night. Her left hand holds a tablet inscribed with the

date "July 4, 1776" (in Roman numerals), the day the United States declared its independence from England. She is wearing flowing robes, called a *palla*, and the seven rays of her spiked crown symbolize the seven seas and continents. The statue was made from copper sheets and it is hollow inside. Inside there is a circular stairway from the base to the crown. There is also a lift in it.

The Statue also commemorates American friendship for it was given by the people of France, designed by Frederic August Bartholdi. He modeled her face after the strong features of his own mother's face. On Washington's birthday, February 22, 1877, Congress approved the use of the site on Beadloe's Island suggested by Bartholdi. This island was called Beadloe's until August 3, 1956, when President Eisenhower approved a resolution of Congress changing the name to Liberty Island.

The sculptor was helped greatly by Alexander Eiffel, who designed the framework to support the gigantic statue.

Construction on the pedestal started in 1884 but soon stopped because the money ran out. The needed funds were finally raised because of a newspaper campaign started by Joseph Pulitzer. He appealed to the people all over the United States to help in the building of the monument. In less than five months, the newspaper campaign had helped to raise the needed money. About 121,000 people had given the \$ 100 000 needed to finish the pedestal.

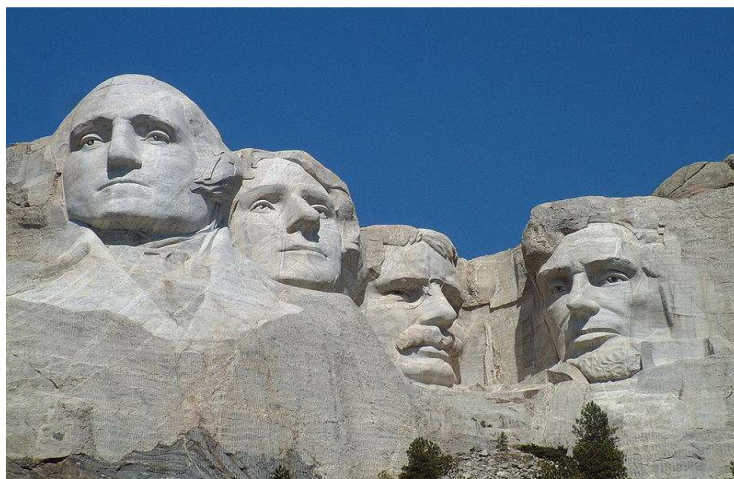
Liberty Enlightening the World was hoisted on Beadloe Island on October 28, 1886, over ten years after the work began. People of America and the world were delighted with this special monument.

In 1972 President Nixon opened the American Museum Immigration at the base of the statue. It houses a permanent exhibition of photos, posters and artifacts tracing the history of American immigration.

Mount Rushmore Memorial

In the Black Hills of South Dakota stands the national memorial Mount Rushmore. It was created by Gutzon Borglum and a crew of over 360 people. Borglum designed Mount Rushmore as a testament to the growth of the country and its great leaders. This

magnificent rock carving depicts the 60-foot high (18.3 m) faces of four great U.S. Presidents. They are George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, Theodore Roosevelt, and Abraham Lincoln. Borglum started drilling into the 6,200-foot mountain in 1927, but he died before it could be completed. The head of Washington was completed first, followed by Jefferson and Lincoln. Roosevelt's head was unfinished when Borglum died in 1941.



The memorial was finished later that year by his son, Lincoln. Borglum's original design was a sculpture of the four presidents to their waists, but time and money only provided for their heads.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- bald eagle* - белоголовый орёл
- vigilance* – бдительность
- scroll* - свиток (с текстом) ; манускрипт в виде свитка
- bundle* - узел, связка; пачка; вязанка; пучок
- solely* - единственно, исключительно, только
- virtue* - добродетель, достоинство
- constellation* – созвездие
- extinction* - вымирание (вида животных, племени)
- falconry* - охота с ловчими птицами; соколиная охота
- pesticide* - пестицид, средство для борьбы с вредителями
- to cast* - лить, отливать
- shipment* - груз; партия товара
- recruiting* - вербовка, набор, наем
- caption* - заглавие, заголовок (в книге, газете)
- refuge* - убежище; прибежище
- copper sheets* – медные листы (бумаги, стекла, металла)
- framework* - остов, корпус, каркас

-torch - осветительный прибор, факел, фонарь
 -spiked – колосистый: с остриями, с шипами
 -circular stairway – круглый пролёт лестницы
 -pedestal - пьедестал, подножие, подставка
 -to hoist - поднимать (что-л.)
 -tangible - ясный; осязаемый, заметный; отчетливый, реальный
 -patois - местное наречие, говор
 -to emulate - имитировать, копировать, подражать
 -contentious issue – спорный вопрос
 -rupture – разрыв
 -to refine – усовершенствовать
 -racial segregation – расовая изоляция
 -starkly beautiful backdrop – фон с застывшей (окаменелой) красотой
 -moisture - влажность, сырость;
 -sparse - разбросанный, редкий
 -grazing - выпас, пастба
 -lumbering - рубка леса; лесоразработки
 -prairie - прерия, степь
 -to dam - перегораживать плотиной;
 -to disrupt - разрывать, разрушать
 -influx - приток, наплыв (большого количества людей)
 -prejudice - предубеждение, предвзятое мнение
 -managerial - директорский, относящийся к управлению

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a large bird of prey with a massive hooked bill and long broad wings, known for its keen sight and powerful soaring flight;*
- *a mark or character used as a conventional representation of an object, function, or process;*
- *the state of being free within society from oppressive restrictions imposed by authority on one's behaviour or political views;*
- *someone who travels to places about which very little is known, in order to discover what is there;*
- *a device or substance that is used to join two things together so as to prevent them from coming apart or to prevent anything from passing between them;*
- *a large sculpture of a person or an animal, made of stone or metal;*
- *a device that makes a ringing sound and is used to give a signal or to attract people's attention;*
- *a structure built in order to remind people of a famous person or event;*
- *a person who comes to live permanently in a foreign country.*

(symbol, seal, eagle, bell, statue, liberty, memorial, explorer, state, immigrant)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. How was the US anthem adopted as the National Anthem?*
- 2. What is the history of the National Flag? Describe it.*
- 3. Who created a seal for the United States of America? Describe it.*
- 4. Why is the bald eagle the national bird of the US?*
- 5. Why did Liberty Bell become the symbol of American Independence and Freedom?*
- 6. Who was Uncle Sam? Why did this figure symbolize the United States?*
- 7. What is the official flower of the US? Why?*
- 8. What does the Statue of Liberty symbolize and commemorate? How was this construction built?*
- 9. Why was Mount Rushmore Memorial created?*
- 10. What are the main geographical features of the USA? How many states does this country include?*
- 11. How many regions are there in the US? What are the main features of these regions?*
- 12. Who were the first American immigrants?*
- 13. How did the government prefer to solve the "Indian problem" in the 19th century?*
- 14. What was the dominant ethnic group among early settlers of the USA?*
- 15. How did America encourage emigration from Europe? Why did so many people enter the US in the 19th century?*
- 16. Who were unwilling immigrants to North America?*
- 17. Who was Martin Luther King? What was his great dream?*
- 18. Is the position of African Americans difficult nowadays?*
- 19. What nationalities came to the US and how did they enrich American communities?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English

- 1. «Большая печать США» служит для заверения подлинности правительственных документов. Хранение Большой печати доверено Государственному секретарю.*
- 2. Решение о создании государственной печати было принято Конгрессом Америки 4 июля 1776 года одновременно с провозглашением Декларации независимости.*
- 3. Джон Адамс на гербе хотел видеть Геракла на отдыхе, держащего в руке дубину.*

4. Во время проведения испано-американской войны 1898 года был использован герб, где голова орла повернута головой к стрелам. Такой герб использовался и в последующих войнах США.

Список всех элементов числом тринадцать на Большой печати США

1. 13 звёзд (лицевая сторона)
2. 13 полос на флаге
3. 13 стрел в лапе орлана
4. 13 оливковых листьев (определено традицией, не согласно закону)
5. 13 маслин на ветви (определено традицией, не согласно закону)
6. 13 кирпичных уровней пирамиды (определено традицией, не согласно закону)
7. 13 букв в надписи «E Pluribus Unum»
8. 13 букв в надписи «Annuit Cœptis», если букву æ считать за две
9. 13 вершин в сумме у двух частей пирамиды (8 у крупной нижней части и 5 у парящей верхней части)
10. 13 пучков травы рядом с пирамидой.

NATURAL FEATURES

NATIONAL PARKS

Natural Resources

The United States possesses vast non-fuel natural resources. The major resource is **iron**, three quarters of which comes from the Lake Superior region of the Great Lakes. Other basic metals and minerals mined on a large scale are **zinc**, **copper**, **silver** and **phosphate rock** (used for fertilizers). This wealth is distributed throughout most of the country, but Texas and the West (especially California) are the most important mineral-producing areas. Mining and quarrying account for only about 2 % of GNP (Gross National Product)

The United States produces one quarter of the world's **coal** and one seventh of its **petroleum**, with sufficient coal reserves to last for hundreds of years. About half of the nation's electric power comes from coal-fired power stations, while natural and manufactured **gas** supply more than 33 % of the nation's power. The main gas fields are

found near the main oil fields in Texas, Louisiana and Alaska. Nuclear power is also used in many places, using **uranium** mined in New Mexico and Wyoming, and produces over 10 % of the nation's energy output.

National Parks

No nation had ever done anything like that. American man-made greatest attractions are Disney World and the museums of Smithsonian Institution. But they cannot compete with America's greatest natural attractions. These are **the National and State Parks**. These can neither be imported or exported, but only preserved and protected. The U.S. National Park System includes some 330 areas from coast to coast. The best known are *the Yellowstone National Park, the Grand Canyon, the Everglades, the Sequoia National Parks, Zion National Park, Monument Valley National Park, Arches National Park, Yosemite National Park, Acadia National Park, Death Valley National Park, Denali National Park and Preserve, Joshua Tree National Park, Grand Teton National Park, Rocky Mountain National Park, Olympic National Park, Great Smoky Mountains National Park, Hot Springs National Park, Lake Clark National Park and Preserve.*

Yellowstone National Park

Yellowstone became the first U.S. National Park in 1872, when President Grant signed a law creating **Yellowstone National Park** “*for the Benefit and Enjoyment of the People*”. Its area of 800 000 hectares is mostly in **Wyoming** and parts of **Idaho** and **Montana**. This act also served as an international model. Since the establishing of Yellowstone, some 100 other countries have created similar national parks. More than 3 million people come to Yellowstone every year. It is famous for its fine scenery, hot springs and geysers (underground hot springs that shoot hot water or steam up into the air). Yellowstone has more hot water activity than any other place in the world. This is caused by a hot spot deep in the earth. The Park has 250 active geysers. ‘Old Faithful’, most famous geyser, has eruption intervals of 80 minutes and it steams into the air to a height of about 46 metres. On peak days during July and August, more than 25 000 visitors are in

the area awaiting eruption. 5 % of the Park is covered with water including the Yellowstone River, Yellowstone Lake, Shoshona Lake, and Lewis Lake. The highest waterfall, Lower Falls is 308 feet.

Native Americans have lived in the Yellowstone region for at least 11,000 years. The U.S. Army was commissioned to oversee the park just after its establishment.



Yellowstone Lake is one of the largest high-altitude lakes in North America and is centered over the Yellowstone Caldera, the largest supervolcano on the continent. The caldera is considered an active volcano. It has erupted with tremendous force several times in the last two million years.

Hundreds of species of mammals, birds, fish and reptiles have been documented, including several that are either endangered or threatened. The vast forests and grasslands also include unique species of plants. Yellowstone Park is the largest and most famous megafauna location in the Continental United States. Yellowstone Park bison herd is the oldest and largest public bison herd in the United States.

Yellowstone bison constitute the largest free roaming herd in North America. The wildlife of the Yellowstone Park includes black bear, grizzly bear, mountain lion, moose, elk, deer, wolf, coyote, antelope, bighorn sheep, beaver, bald eagle and Trumpeter Swan. You will see more animals if you are sensitive to their need to space. Don't approach any wildlife. View them from the safety of your vehicle. If an animal reacts to your presence, you are too close. You must stay at least 25 m. away from the wildlife. Bison may appear tame and slow but are unpredictable and dangerous. Grizzly bears are active during the night and at dawn and dusk. Black bears are active mostly during the day. 14 wolves were captured in Canada and transported to Yellowstone in 1995. Today about 150 wild wolves live here. The thermal activity of the park helps to provide the animals with food. Heat

from the geysers makes grass grow better and in winter keeps the grass from being covered by snow. Water birds that would usually fly south for the winter can stay in the park in water that doesn't freeze.

Forest fires occur in the park each year; in the large forest fires of 1988, nearly one third of the park was burnt. Yellowstone has numerous recreational opportunities, including hiking, camping, boating, fishing and sightseeing. Paved roads provide close access to the major geothermal areas as well as some of the lakes and waterfalls. During the winter, visitors often access the park by way of guided tours that use either snow coaches or snowmobile. The park is located at the headwaters of the Yellowstone River, from which it takes its historical name.

The Grand Canyon

The Grand Canyon of Arizona has sometimes been called the greatest of the world's wonders. It was opened in 1919. It is, in fact, the world's most spectacular illustration of erosion, being the result of the combined action of a great river, of rain, wind and of frost. The Grand Canyon is a gigantic chasm, 247 miles long, 4 to 14 miles wide and 1 mile deep. At the bottom is the mighty Colorado River that rushes to the sea and carries an average of nearly half a million tons of silt through the Canyon every day. Rising from the depths of the Canyon are ranges of mountains. According to geologists' estimates, it has taken 7 to 9 million years to cut the Grand Canyon. Rocks from the first era of geological history are exposed on the Canyon's walls. More than 6,000 prehistoric sites have been found in Grand Canyon National Park.

The colours of the Canyon change through the day. One cannot describe its beauty, and the Grand Canyon is always mysterious.

Theodore Roosevelt was a major proponent of preservation of the Grand Canyon area, and visited it on



numerous occasions to hunt and enjoy the scenery. It is considered one of the Seven Natural Wonders of the World. For thousands of years, the area has been continuously inhabited by Native Americans who built settlements within the canyon and its many caves. The Pueblo people considered the Grand Canyon a holy site and made pilgrimages to it. The first European known to have viewed the Grand Canyon was García López de Cárdenas from Spain, who arrived in 1540.

The Everglades

The Everglades is a large, low, wet region in the southern part of the US **state of Florida**. Some Seminole Native Americans still live there. There are alligators and many varieties of birds and snakes there. Dry weather has recently damaged parts of the Everglades. The Everglades National Park was created in 1947.

Today there are 38 national parks, most of them in the West, covering more than 14 million acres. Additional millions of acres have been set aside as national monuments, national recreation areas, national forests and national seashores. Millions of vacationing Americans each year enjoy days or weeks of relaxation amid nature's most impressive splendours — preserved by man for posterity. Camping and hiking have become extremely popular. The thousands of camping sites have well-earned international reputation for being inexpensive, uncrowded, and clean. Access to the parks is controlled and limited. Americans had lived so close to the wilderness for so long that they have a special love for it.

Death Valley National Park

Death Valley National Monument is a national park in the U.S. **states of California** and **Nevada** located east of the Sierra Nevada. It is the largest national park in the lower 48 states and has been declared an International Biosphere Reserve. Approximately 95% of the park is a designated wilderness area. It is the hottest and driest of the national parks in the United



States. The park is home to many species of plants and animals that have adapted to this harsh desert environment. The valley itself is actually a graben. The oldest rocks are extensively metamorphosed and at least 1.7 billion years old. The desert was a source of the mineral borax in the late 19th century. In 1933, the area became the Death Valley National Monument.

Sequoia National Park

Sequoia National Park is a national park in the southern Sierra Nevada east of Visalia, **California**, in the United States. It was established on September 25, 1890. The park spans 404,063 acres (631.35 sq mi; 1,635.18 km²). Encompassing a vertical relief of nearly 13,000 feet (4,000 m), the park contains among its natural resources the highest point in the contiguous 48 United States, Mount Whitney, at 14,505 feet (4,421 m) above sea level.



The park is famous for its giant sequoia trees, including the General Sherman tree, one of the largest trees on Earth. The General Sherman tree grows in the Giant Forest, which contains five out of the ten largest trees in the world. Indeed, the parks preserve a landscape that still resembles the southern Sierra Nevada before Euro-American settlement.

The National Park Service incorporated the Giant Forest into Sequoia National Park in 1890, the year of its founding, promptly ceasing all logging operations in the Giant Forest. The park has expanded several times over the decades to its present size.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- geysers – гейзер
- bison - зубр американский, бизон
- graben – впадина
- borax – бура, тетраборат натрия

- designated – обозначенный, намеченный
- spring – источник, родник
- pristine – древний, изначальный
- recreation – отдых, приятное времяпровождения
- wilderness – дикая местность
- deciduous – лиственный

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: the Missouri, the Mississippi, the Ohio, the Tennessee, the Rio Grand, the Colorado, the Columbia, the San Joaquin-Sacramento, the Yellowstone National Park, the Grand Canyon, the Everglades, the Sequoia National Parks, Zion National Park, Monument Valley National Park, Arches National Park, Yosemite National Park, Acadia National Park, Death Valley National Park, Denali National Park, Preserve, Joshua Tree National Park, Grand Teton National Park, Rocky Mountain National Park, Olympic National Park, Great Smoky Mountains National Park, Hot Springs National Park, Lake Clark National Park.

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What are the longest rivers in the USA?
2. What is the largest area of fresh water in the world?
3. What are the main features of climate and weather in the USA?
4. What are the main natural resources of the USA?
5. What are the most famous National Parks in the USA?
6. What is the history of Yellowstone National Park? Where is it situated?
What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?
7. What is the history of the Grand Canyon National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?
8. What is the history of the Everglades National Park? Where is it situated?
What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?
9. What is the history of Sequoia National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?
10. What is the history of Joshua Tree National Park? Where is it situated?
What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?
11. What is the history of Rocky Mountains National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?
12. What is the history of Great Smoky Mountains National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?

13. *What is the history of Arches National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?*
14. *What is the history of Hot Springs National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?*
15. *What is the history of Great Teton National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?*
16. *What is the history of Olympic National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?*
17. *What is the history of Denali National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?*
18. *What is the history of Lake Clark National Park? Where is it situated? What is the flora and fauna of this park? What attracts tourists there?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. *Первым белым человеком, увидевшим Йеллоустон в 1807, был Джон Кольтер. Рассказам его никто не поверил. Но и потом, полвека спустя, рассказы охотников были один фантастичнее другого: «Река течёт так быстро, что нагреваются камни на дне», «Рыбу поймал, опустил в кипящую воду – ужин готов», «Фонтаны горячей воды бьют выше леса» и.т.д.*
2. *В 1871 году в горы послали официальную экспедицию, которая поняла, что видит сокровище. В 1872 году специальным законом был создан первый в мире заповедник – Йеллоустонский парк.*
3. *Без гейзеров парк при многих своих достоинствах вряд ли имел бы столько славы. Перед нашими глазами действительно чудо природы. Тысячи лет днём и ночью свистят, рвутся из земных недр фонтаны воды и струи пара, шевелится, подобно тесту, горячая разноцветная грязь.*
4. *Есть места, где тёплые воды образуют озёра разных цветов. Вода бирюзовая, а дно у озёр красное, ярко-жёлтое. Окрасили дно бактерии, живущие почти в кипятке.*
5. *Служба в парке безукоризненно чёткая. Штат работников (1 000 человек) дело знает отлично. Одни отгоняют медведей от людей, а людей от медведей, другие сопровождают экскурсии, третьи убирают мусор, предупреждают дорожные пробки.*
6. *В Йеллоустоне работают шесть учёных биологов.*
7. *Животных в Йеллоустоне много: медведи, лоси, бизоны, олени, пумы (горные львы), койоты, бобры, кролики. Но главными героями являются медведи (около 800). Их два вида в парке: чёрный медведь и бурый (гризли). Гризли держатся скрытно, а чёрные приспособились попрошайничать у туристов. В парке животным ничто не грозит. Их беспокоят только фотографы.*
8. *Большой Каньон – это очень большой овраг, самый большой на земле. Сегодня мы видим Каньон почти таким же, каким его видел первобытный человек.*

Lesson 2

THE LARGEST CITIES OF THE USA

Washington D.C.

From the history of the city



The city of Washington was designed in the late 18th century. When George Washington was elected President of the United States, there was no permanent capital to house the government. Since members of Congress couldn't agree as to where the capital should be located, it was decided to choose a special place

for the new capital. It was agreed to allot a wild and marshy area on **the Potomac River**. The region was called **the District of Columbia**, after Christopher Columbus, and the capital was called Washington, after George Washington. Work on the new capital began in 1791. Since 1800 the main departments of the US government have been there.

Washington is situated between the two states, Maryland and Virginia. It's sometimes called the heart of America. It is the place where the federal government works and where each President of the United States lives.

The central place of the city is **the Mall**, a large open space, a kind of park, stretching from the building of the Capitol to Lincoln Memorial with Washington Memorial in the middle. The Mall is often used by people for public meetings, picnics, games, concerts, etc.

On both sides of the Mall are the numerous buildings of **the Smithsonian Institution** (СМИТСОНОВСКИЙ ИНСТИТУТ) – a group of museums, scientific buildings and collections. James Smithson was an English scientist of the 19th century, who left his entire fortune to the United States asking to use it in order to found “an establishment for the increase and diffusion of knowledge”. The Smithsonian Institution was founded in 1846, and it includes now thirteen museums.

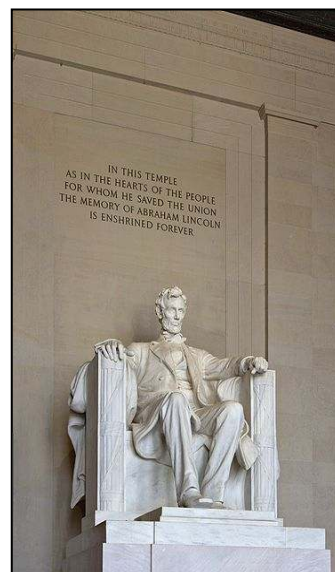
The population of Washington is about 11 million people. The buildings are not very tall because no building must be taller than the Capitol. But in political sense Washington is the centre of the country and the most important city of the United States.



The sights of Washington

Washington is known for its historical monuments and important buildings, including the Capitol, the White House, the Supreme Court, the National Archives, the Library of Congress, the National Gallery of Art and the Kennedy Centre. You can also see Arlington National Cemetery, Jefferson Memorial, Lincoln Memorial, Pentagon, Vietnam Veterans Memorial, Washington Monument.

The Washington National Monument is a tapering shaft or obelisk of white marble. It was built to honour the memory of George Washington. The Monument took 40 years to build and was opened to public in 1888. It is 555 feet (169 metres) high. An elevator takes visitors to the 500-foot level. But if one wishes he can return walking down the 898 steps from which there are fine views of the city.



The Lincoln Memorial

In 1867, two years after Abraham Lincoln's death, Congress organized the Lincoln Memorial Association to plan a monument to his memory. It is made of marble and the design by Henry Bacon was based on the Parthenon in Athens, Greece. The Memorial is in West Potomac Park at one end of the Mall and was completed in 1922. Inside is a large statue of Lincoln sitting in a chair. The words of his Gettysburg Address and his speech at his second Inauguration Day are cut into stone inside the building.

The Jefferson Memorial

Thomas Jefferson, besides being President of the United States, was also a gifted



amateur architect, political thinker, and founder of the University of Virginia. This memorial, dedicated on April 13, 1943, the 200th anniversary of Jefferson's birth, was designed by the architectural firm of John Pope in the simple classical style admired by Jefferson. It was designed like an ancient Greek building with a round roof, and it's made of white marble. It is

situated in East Potomac Park.

Inside the Memorial is a 19-foot bronze statue of Jefferson sculptured by Rudolph Evans. Excerpts from four of Jefferson's writings are carved on the interior walls.



Surrounding the Memorial are cherry trees that the City of Tokyo presented to the City of Washington in 1912.

The Arlington National Cemetery is the most famous national cemetery in the US. It contains the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier and the grave of President John Kennedy. More than

160 000 Americans who were killed in wars are also buried there as well as politicians and other well-known people.

It is in Arlington, Virginia, outside Washington, and was begun in 1864.

In 1997 a Women in Military Service for America Memorial was put up at the entrance to the cemetery.



The Vietnam Veterans Memorial is a long polished black granite wall built in memory of Americans who were killed or lost in the Vietnam War. The wall is V-shaped. It has more than 58 000 names on it.

The Memorial was designed by Maya Lin, an architecture student, and dedicated in 1982. It is near the Lincoln Memorial. It has become an emotional place for former Vietnam soldiers and their families.

A flag-staff and bronze statue of three servicemen stand at the entrance plaza.

New York City

From the history of the city

It is known that the land was bought from the local Indians for 24 dollars. In 1607, the English navigator Captain Henry Hudson left Europe to search for the famous Northwest Passage. He didn't find it, for the reason it didn't exist, but he reached a river to which he gave his name. Interested by the stories told them by the captain on his return, the Dutch in sent other boats in 1624 to take possession of the land discovered by Hudson, Manhattan Island, and gave it the name "**New Amsterdam**"

They erected a wall to protect their settlement from which Wall Street takes its name. On September 8, 1664, British troops occupied New Amsterdam without resistance, overthrew the Dutch government, and called the place "**New York**". Seven years later the Dutch recaptured the city and called it "**New Orange**", but in 1674 the city was in the hands of the British again who returned the name New York.

A Unique City

New York is the largest city and port in the USA. It is the industrial and cultural centre of the country. It is the financial and business centre. It is also the centre of the political life, the centre of mass media and the world's biggest bank centre. New York is the economic capital of the USA. It is a great centre of fashion and arts. New York has a reputation for being 'the city that never sleeps'. New York is inhabited by people of almost all nationalities and races. It is called '**Modern Babylon**' and '**The Big Apple**'. The city offers enormous contrasts. Some of the most expensive homes in the world are in New York City, but on the pavements outside are poor people without a home.

The City of New York is situated at the mouth of the Hudson River, sometimes called the North River, where it empties into the Atlantic Ocean. New York is carefully planned city and it is easy for a stranger to find his way there. The Americans have not given the New York streets names of their famous people, but have called them by ordinal numbers or letters of the alphabet: First Avenue, Second Street and so on.

The five boroughs comprising the city are: **Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens Brooklyn and Richmond.**

Manhattan

Thanks to its geographical position and historical past, New York has grown into a



big financial, commercial, and industrial centre with the heart in the Borough of Manhattan.

Manhattan is an island 13 miles long and 2 miles wide. It's the centre of American advertising, art, theatre, publishing, fashion. The island is named after a Native American people who once lived there. Manhattan is divided into **the East Side** and **the West**

Side. The dividing line is **Fifth Avenue.**

Manhattan is also divided into **Lower (Downtown) Manhattan, Midtown,** and **Upper (Uptown) Manhattan.**

Lower (Downtown) Manhattan is the southern part of the island, nearest the Atlantic Ocean. Upper (Uptown) Manhattan is the northern part of the island.

Lower (Downtown) Manhattan

The first Europeans to settle in Manhattan were the Dutch. To protect themselves from possible attacks, they built a strong wooden wall. This wall, which is now destroyed, gave its name to a street in Lower Manhattan, and the street, in its turn, became a synonym



of American capitalism. This street is **Wall Street**. It's easy to see why Wall Street is a synonym of capitalism. **The New York Stock Exchange** and the **American Stock Exchange** are located in the Wall Street area, as well as many banks and offices of many large corporations. It's one of the biggest money capitals of the world. Economic and financial power of the United States is concentrated in the buildings of Wall Street.

The Declaration of Independence was read to the American troops here on July 9, 1776, in the presence of George Washington. It was here on April 30, 1789, that Washington took the oath of office on the balcony of **Federal Hall**.

The Lower East Side became an area in which immigrants settled. First there were many Irish, then came many Jews from Eastern Europe. In recent years new immigrant groups have settled here: for example, 'Little Italy'. Many Italian restaurants and cafes which are famous for Italian food are popular with tourists.



Close to 'Little Italy' another immigrant area is situated – Chinatown. Chinatown is the only immigrant community in Manhattan that is still growing. Chinatown has seven newspapers of its own. More than 200 restaurants serve traditional Chinese food.



In **the Lower West Side** a famous **Greenwich Village** is situated. Its elegant-looking houses in narrow tree-lined streets look very picturesque and charming. In the early 1900s this charm attracted writers and artists. The rents were cheap, and for many years Greenwich Village was a place for people with different and creative ideas. It had an active nightlife with plenty of bars, restaurants and clubs. There are many theatres in the Greenwich Village. Plays at these theatres are more experimental, more interesting than plays on Broadway. They may involve

audience participation. Today rents in Greenwich Village are far from cheap, and not many artists can afford them.

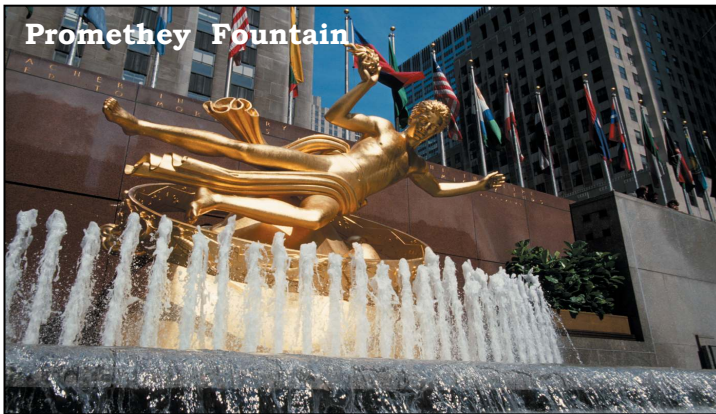
Midtown

Many of New York offices and jobs are concentrated in **Midtown**, as well as many of its famous skyscrapers. The first skyscraper in New York was built in 1902. It was twenty storeys high.

The first building boom for skyscrapers came in late 1920s. These skyscrapers were abundantly and richly decorated. The most beautiful and famous of such skyscrapers of that time are **the Chrysler Building** and **the Empire State Building**, the third tallest building in the world. A visitor can go to the top of the Empire State Building and admire the view of Manhattan. It has 102 floors. The Empire State Building has become a symbol of New York. The fourth tallest building in the world, the commanding position of the most famous building ever erected by man (443 metres) offers inspiring views around the horizon, night or day, in wet weather or dry, to visitors from around the world. The Empire

State Building has become not only a symbol of New York but also part of its history – when a plane crashed into it in 1945.

Rockefeller Centre, which was built by John Rockefeller Junior between 1931 – 1939, is the world's largest privately owned business and entertainment centre. Today it consists of nineteen buildings, which include offices, shops, and various places of entertainment: **Music Hall, Museum of Modern Art, Carnegie Hall**.



Carnegie Hall is a large concert hall used for all types of music. When it first opened in 1891 it was called the Music Hall, but in 1898 it was named after Andrew Carnegie, a rich American who gave about \$ 350 million to help good projects. He was born in Scotland and made his wealth in the steel industry. He gave money to organizations working for world peace and to build many libraries and other buildings.

There were plans to destroy Carnegie Hall in 1950s but a campaign by well-known musicians saved it.

The buildings are connected by underground passages. The centre is also famous for its Christmas Tree and lights that are put up each year, as well as its outdoor winter ice-skating rink.

In the 1950s there was a second building boom, which introduced a new style – buildings of steel and glass. **The United Nations Secretariat Building** was the first steel-and-glass skyscraper. On weekends, weather permitting the flags of all member states can be seen flying along United Nations Plaza in English alphabetical order. The United Nations uses six official languages: English, French, Spanish, Russian, Arabic and Chinese.

Visitors who come to Headquarters among the gifts in the Public Lobby can see a model of Sputnik 1 (from Russia), the Foucault Pendulum (from the Netherlands), a statue

of Poseidon (from Greece), a painting “Brotherhood” (from Mexico), and the Chagall window – a dramatic, blue, 15 by 20 foot stained glass panel.

The new style became very popular, and today there are a lot of steel-and-glass skyscrapers in Manhattan.

St Patrick’s Cathedral is another midtown landmark. The Gothic Revival structure, New York’s most famous church was opened in 1879. Today it features high-society weddings and the shrine of the first American male Saint, St John Newman.

New York is an outstanding **Theatre District**. The centre of it is **Times Square**. Times Square got its name from the New York Times, the most popular newspaper in America, which has its main office there. **The Theatre District** begins at Times Square and occupies an area near **Broadway**. Broadway has long been the centre of theatre life in the United States.



Before the rise of the film industry, Broadway was the place where actors could become famous. Broadway’s best years were in the 1920s when there were about 80 theatres.

Since the early 1970s the high cost of producing plays has forced many theatres to close or to become cinemas, and Broadway is not as important as it once was.

The World Trade Centre (the Twin Towers) were the tallest buildings in the world, but a terrorist bomb exploded in the Centre in 1993 killing six people and injuring more than a thousand. On September 11th 2001 the Twin Towers were both destroyed in another terrorist attack. Two planes crashed into the towers, and a short time later both towers collapsed. The area where the building used to be is now called **Ground Zero**. A memorial to the victims of the attack is planned for the site.

Upper (Uptown) Manhattan

Practically the whole of the Manhattan area is a sea of concrete. Luckily for New Yorkers, there is one exception: **Central Park**.

This huge park in the middle of the city was designed in the 1850s by the landscape architect Frederick Law Olmsted. He wanted to build a large beautiful park where a lot of New York residents could rest and enjoy nature.

You can take a ride through Central Park in a little carriage pulled by a horse, or rent a bicycle. There are many attractions in the park: a zoo, a skating-rink, an old-fashioned carousel, a lake with boats, and an outdoor theatre.

After Central Park was opened in 1876, some wealthy New Yorkers soon built mansions along Fifth Avenue. Now many of these mansions hold art collections. There are so many museums in this part of Fifth Avenue, that it is called “**Museum Mile**”. One of the museums is **the Metropolitan Museum Art**, with huge collections of art from all over the world. It’s one of the largest and finest museums in the world.

The American Museum of Natural History is the largest science museum in the world.

Uptown Manhattan has a **Memorial to Christopher Columbus** in Columbus Circle and Columbia University which was founded in 1754.

Ellis Island **Immigration Museum** tells the moving tales of the 12 million immigrants who entered America through the golden door of Ellis Island. Today the descendants of these immigrants account for almost half of the American people. **The American Immigrant Wall of Honour** is a special feature of the Ellis Island Museum. Overlooking the Statue of Liberty and the New York skyline, it is the longest wall of names in the world. Each name was placed on the Wall by individuals who donated \$100 in memory of their ancestors for the reswtoration of Ellis Island.

Harlem is a poor district of north Manhattan. It was originally a Dutch village. Many of the people living there now are African Americans, though there are many Puerto Ricans living in east Harlem, also called Spanish Harlem. Many African Americans moved there from the southern states in the 1920s and made it their cultural centre. Harlem had a very active club scene. Whites from downtown came to Harlem and partied until the early hours of the morning. The depression of the 1930s hit Harlem hard. With a bad economy and discrimination, many blacks were unable to earn a living. Many middle-class

blacks left. Harlem has never really recovered. But it kept its special feel and remains a centre for black culture.

The Bronx

The Bronx in the north is more residential rather than industrial part of the city. In the past it had a reputation as a poor area with a lot of crime and drug but its image has improved. It contains Yankee Stadium, the New York Botanical Garden and the Bronx Zoo.

Queens

Queens in the east is both residential and industrial part of the city. It is the largest of the five boroughs of New York City. It was named after the wife of Charles II. The area of Queens is known for its large Greek community. The John Kennedy Airport, several racing tracks and the Museum of the Moving Image are all here.

Brooklyn and Richmond

Brooklyn is connected to Manhattan by the **Brooklyn Bridge** over the East River. The bridge was opened in 1883 and has a length of 486 metres. Brooklyn is an industrial port but the area in it is one of the most beautiful in the city. Brooklyn is the largest in

population. It is called 'bedroom of New York'. It has its own dialect 'Brooklynese'.

Richmond is a borough of piers and warehouses. Its population is 200 000.

Many Americans have never been to New York, everyone knows

something about the city. Many immigrants to the US stayed in New York, giving the city the variety of cultures it has today.

Today there are about 8 million people in New York City. New Yorkers speak in a very direct way which can seem rude to people from other parts of the US. But for many visitors, meeting real, rude New Yorkers is part of the attraction of going to the city. New



York is a great shopping centre. Shopping is a serious recreational sport for millions of tourists.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to allot – выделять, предоставлять
- inauguration – вступление в должность, инаугурация;
- excerpt – выдержка, цитата, отрывок
- cemetery – кладбище
- borough – район крупного города
- skyscraper – небоскрёб, высотное здание
- pier – пирс, причал
- warehouse – товарный склад

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Washington, the Potomac River, the Mall, the Smithsonian Institution, the Lincoln Memorial, the Arlington National Cemetery, Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens, Brooklyn, Richmond, Greenwich Village, the Chrysler Building, the Empire State Building, Rockefeller Centre, Carnegie Hall, Harlem.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a broad road in a town or city, typically having trees at regular intervals along its sides;
 - a large burial ground, especially one not in a churchyard;
 - a structure built in order to remind people of a famous person or event;
 - a very tall building in a city;
 - a tall stone pillar that has been built in honour of a person or an important event;
 - a town or district which is an administrative unit, in particular.
- (cemetery, borough, skyscraper, memorial, obelisk, avenue)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

II. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Where is the city of Washington situated?

2. *What is the Mall?*
3. *What are the most famous monuments and historical buildings in Washington?*
4. *What is the history of the Lincoln Memorial?*
5. *What is the history of the Jefferson Memorial?*
6. *What is the history of the Arlington National Cemetery?*
7. *How was the Vietnam Veterans Memorial designed?*
8. *What is the history of New York City?*
9. *How many boroughs are there in New York City?*
10. *What are the main interesting places and buildings in Manhattan?*
11. *What is the main purpose of Rockefeller Centre?*
12. *Why is Theatre District so outstanding in New York?*
13. *What area is called Ground Zero?*
14. *Are there any parks in New York?*
15. *What interesting museums can you visit in New York?*
16. *What is Harlem?*
17. *What did you know about the Bronx, Queens, Brooklyn and Richmond?*

III. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. *В 1609 году Генри Гудзон, английский моряк на службе у Ост-Индской компании, подрядился исследовать легендарный северо-западный проход в Тихий океан. Через пять лет появилась карта с впервые нанесенным на нее островом Манхэттеном, который с 1625 года систематически стали осваивать голландские купцы.*
2. *Моряки и купцы стали первыми колонистами острова. Они построили бревенчатые хижины, а само поселение назвали Новыми Нидерландами.*
3. *В 1626 году на острове появился первый губернатор Петер Минуит, совершивший легендарную сделку: он «купил» у доверчивых индейцев племени «манхатан» права на остров за несколько ножей, ярких безделушек и одеял — всего стоимостью 60 гульденов.*
4. *В 1639 году на восточной стороне бухты был основан поселок Брейкелен, из которого впоследствии вырос нью-йоркский район Бруклин. Через три года датчанин Йоханнес Бронк, перейдя с острова через реку Гарлем, поселился на материке, где стал выращивать табак (позднее здесь развился Бронкс).*
5. *Когда соперничество между Голландией и Англией на морских торговых путях переросло в необъявленную войну, разоренный Новый Амстердам в 1664 году без малейшего сопротивления капитулировал перед английской эскадрой.*
6. *В 1664 году английский король Карл II подарил своему брату Якову, герцогу Йоркскому, часть земель Новых Нидерландов. Вот тогда Новый Амстердам и был переименован в честь своего нового хозяина в Нью-Йорк.*

7. Уже в первое десятилетие XVIII века Нью-Йорк превратился в культурный центр британской Америки: здесь стала издаваться газета, открылись театр и Библиотека нью-йоркского общества, начал свою деятельность Королевский колледж (теперь Колумбийский университет). Благоустраивались улицы города, были возведены новые церкви, в дома провели воду, организовали движение городского транспорта.
8. До конца XIX века Нью-Йорк состоял только из Манхэттена, отдельно выделялся Бруклин, а все остальные районы были лишь мелкими фермами, пригородами, независимыми поселками.
9. На середине Уолл-стрит стоит самое старинное здание Нью-Йорка — сложенный из серого гранита дом, увенчанный портиком. Он знаменит тем, что в нем Д. Вашингтон был возведен в должность первого президента США, здесь же были обнародованы «Билль о правах» и «Декларация независимости».
10. Одной из достопримечательностей Нью-Йорка является квартал Гринвич-Виллидж, расположенный на острове Эллис. В начале XVII века на этом месте находилось индейское поселение, но в 1696 году здесь поселились британские завоеватели, которые и дали деревне название английского городка Гринвич. В XVII веке многие богатые землевладельцы имели поместья в Гринвиче, в результате чего он и сделался одним из знаменитых районов Нью-Йорка.

Lesson 3

POLITICAL LIFE OF THE USA

Separation of Powers

The USA is a presidential republic. The American Constitution is based on the doctrine of the separation of powers between the executive, legislative and judiciary. The respective government institutions – **the Presidency, Congress, and the Supreme Court and other federal courts** – were given limited and specific powers.

Executive Branch and Presidential Powers

The executive branch of the government puts the country's laws into effect. The President of the United States is a member of the executive branch. The President must be at least 35 years old, and be a natural citizen of the USA. In addition, he must have lived in the US for at least 14 years, and be a civilian. The President together with the Vice-President is elected every four years and cannot serve more than two terms.. When the President receives a bill from the Congress and he signs it, the bill becomes a law. He also appoints the justices to the Supreme Court. He must do his job according to the Constitution. The President is a Commander-in-chief of the armed forces. As head of his political party, with ready access to the news media, the president can easily influence public opinion.

The president appoints the heads and senior officials of the departments and agencies. Heads of the major departments, called 'secretaries', are part of the president's Cabinet. The majority of federal workers, however, are selected on the basis of merit, not politics.

The Executive Office of the President

The White House is the official residence of every US President. It stands on the south side of Pennsylvania Avenue in Washington. The main building has 6 floors, with the East Terrace leading to the East Wing, a three-story building used for offices and as an entrance for official events. The West Terrace contains offices and leads to the Executive Office. It is built of stone painted white and was designed in 1800 by James Hoban, who

was born in Ireland. The cornerstone of the Executive Mansion, as it was originally known, was laid on October 13, 1792. President Washington never lived there. It was John Adams, the second President who arrived in the new capital city to take up his residence in the White House. Compared to the huge, glittering palaces used by European and Asian rulers at the time it was built, the White House is a simple, almost unpretentious dwelling place.



On August 24, 1814, the British troops entered Washington and set fire to the White House. In 1817, James Hoban completed rebuilding the “Executive Mansion”.

The British were indirectly responsible for the name “White House”. Since the marks of the fire were clearly seen on the sandstone walls, they had to be obliterated by being painted white. But the House remained the “Executive Mansion” until the administration of Theodore Roosevelt (1901-1909), when the words “White House” appeared and the term became official.

In 1947 President Truman (1945-1953) had a second-floor porch built into the south portico. In 1948 he asked Congress to authorize complete rebuilding because the White House was unsafe. Reconstruction cost \$ 5,761,000. The interior was completely removed, steel frame was built to support the interior. All original trim and metal work were preserved.

The White House has 132 rooms. 54 rooms on the second and the third floors are reserved for the First Family. 5 of the rooms are open to the public. They are **the Blue Room, East Room, Green Room, Red Room, and State Dining Room.**

The Oval Blue Room contains furnishings in the French Empire style. There are seven gilded chairs. There is a portrait of President W. Taft sitting in the Blue Room.

The East Room is used for large gatherings. The grand piano with gilt American eagle supports was given to the White House in 1938. There is a full-length portrait of George Washington.

The Green Room was intended to be the common dining room. There are several historic pieces of Presidential silver on sofa table. Portraits of two presidents hang above the door.

The Red Room is one of the four state reception rooms. The furniture in this room dates from 1810-1830.

The State Dining Room seats 140 guests. Its table is surrounded by Queen Ann-style chairs.

There are many famous rooms such as the Library Room, the China Room, the Diplomatic Reception Room, the Map Room, the Lincoln Bedroom, the Treaty Room, and, of course, the President's Oval Office.

A million visitors go through the White House every year free of charge. Most visitors walk through the East Garden Room to the glass-enclosed colonnade that leads to the Ground Floor. A massive bronze bust of Abraham Lincoln rests in a wall niche. Ground Floor Corridor is made of marble. There are busts of George Washington, Benjamin Franklin and other outstanding Americans. There are portraits of First Ladies.

Legislative Branch

The Legislative branch of the US government, or **the Congress**, represents all of the American states. It is the only branch of U.S. government that can make federal laws. It consists of two chambers: **the House of Representatives and the Senate**.

Each state has two senators, who are elected every 6 years. **A senator** must be at least 30 years old, a citizen of the United States for 9 years, and live in the state she or he will represent. The duty of the senators was to ensure that their states were treated equally in all legislation. There are currently 100 senators. The Senate has the special privilege of unlimited debate to safeguard the rights of minorities, but this can enable a small group of senators to prevent the passage of a bill. The Senate has special responsibility in matters to do with foreign policy, and it also has the power to advise and consent on appointments made by the President. **The Vice-President** of the USA is president of **the Senate**.

The House of Representatives is the dynamic institution of the federal government. There are currently 435 members who are elected every two years. A representative must be at least 25 years old, a citizen for 7 years, and live in the state.

The Chairman of the House of Representatives, **the Speaker**, is elected by the House and has important responsibilities, giving him considerable influence over the President. More over, should the President or Vice President die before the end of their terms, it is the Speaker who becomes President.

The job of **the Congress** is to make laws. The President may sign or veto a bill. The Congress can pass the law anyway if it gets a two-thirds majority vote. The Congress can also declare war. The House of Representatives can impeach the President. This means that the House can charge the President with a crime. In this case, the Senate will put the President on trial. The Senate votes to approve the justices that the President appoints to the Supreme Court. Congress also controls the nation's finances and its permanent specialist staff helps Congress to consider and change the budget presented each year by the President.

When a bill passes the House and the Senate in different forms, members of both bodies meet in a 'conference committee' to iron out the differences. Groups that try to persuade members of Congress to vote for or against a bill are called 'lobbies'. Once both bodies have passed the same version of a bill, it goes to the president for approval.

In a system of government based on a series of checks and balances, the two Houses of Congress act as a check of each other, as well as together forming a check on the powers of the executive branch.

The Seat of American Legislature

The Capitol, located on Capitol Hill, dominates the City of Washington. Through the halls of this magnificent structure have passed the leading figures in American history.

The Capitol is the tallest edifice (88 feet) in Washington: no other building is allowed to be taller than the Capitol.

Construction of the US Capitol began in 1793. President John Adams addressed the first joint session of Congress in the Senate Chamber on November 22, 1800.

All interiors of the building were burnt by the British in 1814. The Capitol was reoccupied in 1819. The present Senate and House wings were begun in 1851. Since then, numerous changes have been made.

The Library of Congress is the Nation's library. Its services extend not only to Members and committees of the Congress, but to executive and judicial branches of government, to libraries throughout the Nation and the world, and to the scholars and researchers and artists and scientists who use its resources.

When President John Adams signed the bill that provided for the removal of the seat of government to the new capital city of Washington in 1800, he created a reference library for Congress only.

The first books were ordered from England and shipped across the Atlantic. The library was housed in the new Capitol, until August 1814, when British troops invaded Washington, and when they put the torch to the Capitol Building, the Small Library was lost.

Within a month former President Thomas Jefferson, living in retirement, offered his personal library, accumulated over a span of 50 years. His library was considered one of the finest in the United States.

After considerable debate Congress in January 1815 accepted Jefferson's offer, appropriating \$ 23950 for the collection of 6487 books.

The Library of Congress complex on Capitol Hill includes three buildings. **The Thomas Jefferson Building**, executed in Italian Renaissance style, is the oldest of these. Heralded as the largest library structure in the world, it is elaborately decorated with splendid sculpture, murals, and mosaics created by 50 American artists. **The Main Reading Room** houses a collection of 45 000 reference books and desks for 250 readers. The adjacent Computer Catalogue Centre provides public access to the Library's automated catalogue files through computer terminals.

The simply designed, dignified **John Adams Building**, faced with white Georgia marble, was opened in 1939. Bas-relief sculptures on its large bronze doors represent 12 historic figures credited with giving the art of writing to their people.

The white marble **James Madison Memorial Building**, dedicated on April 24, 1980, more than doubled the Library's available Capitol Hill space. Eight reading rooms, offices, and storage areas for the Library's special-format collections number over 70 million items.

Collections of the whole library include more than 86 million items covering every subject in format that vary from papyrus to optical disk. The Library has 26 million books in 60 languages and more than 36 million manuscripts, among them such treasures of American history and culture as the papers of Presidents, notable families, writers, artists, and scientists.

The Library has the world's largest and most comprehensive cartographic collection – almost 4 million maps and atlases, dating back to the middle of the 14th century, music collection that includes not only paper material, but also Stradivarius instruments. There are also 80 000 motion picture titles, 50 000 television broadcasts, 350 000 radio transcriptions.

Lesson 4

POLITICAL PARTIES PRESIDENTIAL ELECTIONS

Many of America's Founding Fathers hated the thought of political parties. They were sure that quarreling parties would be more interested in contending with each other than in working for the common good. They wanted individual citizens to vote for individual candidates, without the interference of organized groups – but this was not to be.

Political parties were not mentioned in the original Constitution. Differences over the role of the federal government led to the first national parties – **the Federalists and the Republicans**. Since then two major parties have dominated political life.

By the 1790s, the followers of Alexander Hamilton called themselves 'Federalists', they favoured a strong central government that would support the interests of commerce and industry. The followers of Thomas Jefferson called themselves 'Democratic-Republicans', they preferred a decentralized agrarian republic in which the federal government had limited power.

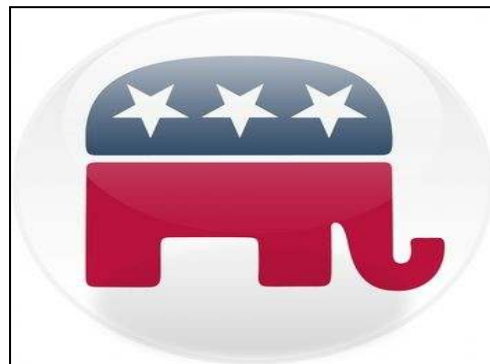


By 1828, the Federalists had disappeared as an organization. The Democratic-Republicans became Democrats, and the two-party system, still in existence today, was born.

By 1860, parties were well established as the country's dominant political organizations. Party loyalty was passed from fathers to sons, and party activities – including spectacular campaign events, complete with uniformed marching groups and torchlight parades – were a part of the social life of many communities.

By the 1920s, this boisterous folksiness had diminished. Municipal reforms, civil service reform, corrupt practices acts, and presidential primaries to replace the power of politicians at national conventions had all helped to clean up politics.

The Democratic Party has existed since the beginning of the 1800s. Compared with their rivals, **the Republican Party**, the Democrats are more liberal and have strong support from minorities and the trade unions. Democrats generally believe that government has an obligation to provide social and economic programs for those who need them. Democratic Presidents have included Thomas Jefferson, Andrew Jackson, Franklin Roosevelt, Harry Truman, John Kennedy, Bill Clinton and so on. The traditional symbol for the party is **the donkey**.



The Republican Party, sometimes called the Grand Old Party, receives more support from rich people and is more conservative than its rival. It was established in 1854 by people who wanted to free the slaves. Abraham Lincoln was the first Republican President, and others have included Theodore Roosevelt, Ronald Reagan, George Bush and George W Bush and so on. The official symbol of the party is **an elephant**.

Republicans believe that social and economic programs are too costly to taxpayers. Republicans put more emphasis on encouraging private enterprise in the belief that a strong private sector makes citizens less dependent on government.

There is little ideological difference between the Democratic and the Republican parties, as both parties defend the free-enterprise capitalist system, accepted by almost all Americans as the basis of American society. It's broadly possible to say that poor people vote for the Democrats and wealthy people for the Republicans. American politics are the politics of pragmatism and a party will always alter its platform to try and catch the mood of the nation.

Presidential Elections

The President is directly elected by the people. Americans regularly exercise their democratic rights by voting in elections and by participating in political parties and election campaigns.

Americans over the age of 18 have the right to vote, but only about half of them take part in presidential elections.

A large amount of money is spent on election campaigning, where candidates try to achieve '*name recognition*' (making their names widely known) by advertizing on television, in newspapers and on posters. They take part in debates and hold rallies where they give speeches and go round '*pressing the flesh*', shaking hands with as many voters as possible.



The political parties choose their candidates through a series of *primary elections* held in each state. All the electoral votes of a state go to one candidate who got the most votes in the state, and the candidate with at least 270 votes out of 538 becomes President. It's therefore possible for the President to be elected without getting a majority of the US people's votes. Many Americans think that the system is old-fashioned and should be changed. After the election, the new President goes to Washington for the inauguration on 20 January, and takes the oath of office.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

1. *the legislative branch* – законодательная власть
2. *the House of Representatives* – палата представителей
3. *the Senate* – сенат
4. *to veto a bill* – наложить вето на законопроект
5. *to pass the law* – провести закон
6. *to get a two-thirds majority vote* – получить большинство в две трети голосов
7. *to put the President on trial* – судить президента
8. *to approve the justices* – утвердить судей
9. *to appoint a justice to the Supreme Court* – назначить судьёю Верховного суда
10. *the executive branch* – исполнительная власть
11. *to put the country's laws into effect* – приводить в исполнение законы страны
12. *to be a natural citizen of the USA* – родиться в США и быть гражданином США
13. *to be a civilian* – быть штатским
14. *a term* – срок службы
15. *the judicial branch* – судебная власть
16. *to enforce laws* – проводить законы в жизнь

17. *an associate justice* - судья (помощник судьи)
18. *to be appointed for life* – назначаться пожизненно
19. *check and balances* – принцип взаимозависимости и взаимоограничения законодательной, исполнительной и судебной власти
20. *to abuse* – злоупотреблять (властью)
21. *to interpret the laws* – толковать законы
22. *to ensure* – обеспечивать, гарантировать
23. *to implement* – выполнять, внедрять
24. *State (Department)* – Госдепартамент
25. *Defense* – министерство обороны
26. *Justice* - министерство юстиции
27. *Treasury* - министерство финансов
28. *Commerce* - министерство торговли
29. *Labour* - министерство труда и занятости
30. *Health* – министерство здравоохранения
31. *Education and Welfare* - министерство образования и социального обеспечения
32. *Housing and Urban Development* - министерство жилищного строительства и городского развития
33. *Interior* - министерство внутренних дел
34. *Agriculture and Transportation* - министерство сельского хозяйства и транспорта
35. *resignation* – отставка
36. *inauguration* – торжественное вступление в должность
37. *oath of office* – присяга при вступлении в должность
38. *to lay the cornerstone* – заложить первый камень (основание)
39. *to hail* – провозглашать
40. *currently* – в настоящее время
41. *to stagger* – распределять в определённом порядке
42. *nomination* – назначение на должность, выставление кандидата на выборах
43. *primary elections* – предварительные выборы, голосование (сторонников какой-либо партии) для выставления кандидатов на выборах
44. *Electoral College* – коллегия выборщиков на президентских выборах
45. *Ballot paper* – избирательный бюллетень

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. Is the USA a presidential or monarchical republic?*
- 2. What is the American Constitution based on?*
- 3. What are the main respective government institutions?*

4. *What are the main functions of the Executive Branch? Who is the most important member of the Executive Branch?*
5. *What is the official residence of every US President? Describe it?*
6. *What are the main functions of the Legislative Branch?*
7. *What are the main functions of the Senate? Who are the main members of the Senate?*
8. *What is the job of the House of Representatives and the Congress?*
9. *Where is the Seat of American Legislature located?*
10. *How did the Library of Congress appear? What do collections of the whole library include? Why is the Library very much appreciated by the Americans?*
11. *What are the main functions of the Judicial Branch?*
12. *What are the main political parties in the USA? How did they appear?*
13. *What is the procedure of Presidential Election?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. *В Белом доме шесть этажей: два подвальных, два для общественных приёмов и два для семьи Президента.*
2. *Посетители, приходящие в Белый дом на экскурсию, имеют возможность увидеть самые красивые и исторические помещения.*
3. *Глава администрации президента США (White House Chief of Staff — досл. Начальник штаба Белого Дома) — старший помощник президента США и глава Исполнительного офиса Президента США. Глава администрации отвечает за надзор за действиями сотрудников Белого дома, управление графиком президента и решает, кто имеет право на встречу с президентом.*
4. *По традиции, первая леди станет хозяйкой Белого дома. Она имеет возможность изменить его интерьеры по своему вкусу.*
5. *Именно в Белом доме зимой устанавливается главное рождественское дерево страны. В качестве украшений на елку вешают маленькие макеты мемориалов, являющиеся символами каждого из американских штатов. Эти игрушки изготавливаются художниками каждого штата, и за право сделать рождественский макет к следующему празднику борются лучшие мастера страны.*
6. *Благодаря первым леди Белый дом являет собой самый интересный музей страны, так как каждая президентская семья оставила в нем фрагменты своего быта. Здесь можно увидеть и сахарницу Марты Вашингтон, и серебряный кофейник Абигейл Адамс. В одной из 132 комнат дворца находится туалетный столик Элеоноры Рузвельт.*
7. *Значительный след в истории Белого дома оставила Жаклин Кеннеди. Она наполнила особняк лучшими образцами мебели XVIII-XIX веков, упростила музеи США*

подарить Белому дому 150 старинных картин, закупила во Франции шторы ручной работы.

8. В Государственном обеденном зале каждый может прочесть выгравированные на каминной доске строки из письма президента Адамса его жене Абигейл, которые являются своеобразной «молитвой» Белого дома: «Я молюсь о том, чтобы небеса ниспослали все лучшие дары этому дому и всем, кто впоследствии будет здесь жить. Пусть под этой крышей правят только честные, мудрые люди».

9. В Капитолии насчитывается более 500 комнат. Для осмотра туристам доступно всего две комнаты, Первый и второй этаж – это офисные помещения Конгресса, на третьем располагается Палата представителей.

10. Из специальных галерей можно наблюдать за самим процессом заседания Конгресса и Сената.

11. Наиболее посещаемым помещением Капитолия является Ротонда, где можно по достоинству оценить коллекцию скульптур и картин.

12. В национальном скульптурном зале Капитолия Вашингтона насчитывается 100 скульптур выдающихся граждан США — по две от каждого из пятидесяти штатов. Даже индейцы есть.

13. В Пентагоне расположено Минобороны США и, наверное поэтому, его еще называют «символом высшей власти» государства. Интересен тот факт, что Пентагон является крупнейшим офисным зданием в мире. В Пентагоне работает более 20 тысяч людей.

Lesson 5

OUTSTANDING AMERICAN PRESIDENTS

Abraham Lincoln: 16th President (1865 - 1865)

Honest Abe

‘Whenever I hear anyone arguing for slavery, I feel a strong impulse to see it tried on him personally.’

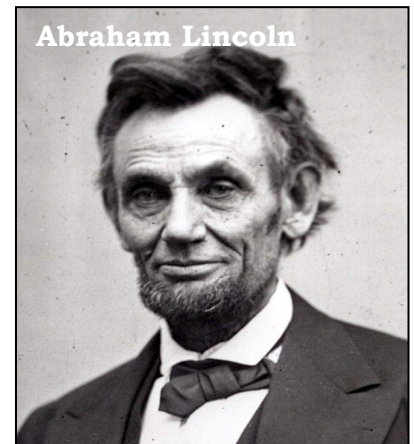
Abraham Lincoln is regarded by many people as America’s greatest president, because he preserved the Union and freed the slaves. Abraham Lincoln is the most famous example of the “**American dream**”. Many Americans think that in their country a man may rise from the lowest to the highest position in their land. That was exactly what Lincoln did.

Abraham Lincoln was born in a log cabin on a small farm in Kentucky, in the family of wandering labourer. The family was constantly on the move, and so Abraham didn’t get any regular education. He only learnt to read and write and do simple arithmetic. But the boy loved to read books, and usually he read late into the night by candlelight.

When Lincoln was a young man, he moved with his family to Illinois, where he spent six years, working in a shop, acting as a local postmaster, doing other jobs, and all the while studying grammar, law, reading newspapers, thus laying the foundation for his future success.

He entered politics and in 1834 became a candidate to the Parliament of Illinois. He soon became a force in the political life.

In 1836 Lincoln began practicing law. In 1837 he moved to Springfield, which by that time had become the capital of the state. In 1846 he was elected to the United States Congress and in 1847 Lincoln went as a Congressman to the National Assembly.



Lincoln was very tall man, the tallest president. He spoke with a high-pitched prairie accent. He used to roughhouse and wrestle with his young sons. He liked to tell jokes when people would get too gloomy. Lincoln was a quiet, gentle person. In arguing with others about slavery, he never became angry with those who disagreed with him. He simply said that slavery was wrong. "If slavery is not wrong, nothing is wrong," he used to say. Slavery was then becoming a burning question in American politics.

On November 6, 1860, Abraham Lincoln was elected sixteenth President of the United



States. Now the country was clearly split into two opposing camps: the free-from-slavery Northern states and the slave-owning Southern states. The Southerners said that it would mean economic ruin for them. The reason was that the prosperity of the South was based on cotton-growing, and only Negroes worked there. This fact led to the movement of secession of Southern states. In 1861 eleven states left the Union and formed an independent 'Confederacy'. They elected

their own President, Jefferson Davis. An increasing number of people mostly from the industrial northern states were called **abolitionists**, the agricultural southern states were called **secessionists**.

Lincoln was strongly against slavery and even more strongly against the break-up of the Union. But on April 12, 1861 **the American Civil War** between the North and the South began, one of the saddest periods in the history of the United States.

When the war began, the greatness of Lincoln's mind and heart were unexcelled. As long as he lived and ruled the people of the North, there could be no turning back. Lincoln wrote: 'As I wouldn't be a slave, so I wouldn't be a master. This expresses my idea of democracy'. Lincoln's determination soon began to be widely felt and appreciated by

common people. The belief that he could be trusted spread quickly. “Honest Abe” was his nickname.

At first the war went badly for the North. The Southerners headed by **General Robert Lee** and **Colonel Jackson** won some brilliant victories. But Lincoln didn’t lose courage. After the battle of Gettysburg in 1863, President Lincoln made the famous **Gettysburg Address** about democracy. The same year he issued the ‘**Emancipation Proclamation**’ which made slavery illegal, but only in the Confederacy. It allowed black people to serve in the army and navy and caused many people in England and France to give their support to the North. Slaves played an important part in the war, giving information to Union soldiers and also serving in the Union army. In the South people suffered greatly during the war and had little to eat. The Proclamation led in 1865 to the Thirteenth Amendment to the American Constitution, which officially ended slavery in all parts of the US.

In 1864, Abraham Lincoln was unanimously reelected President. On April 9, 1865 General Lee surrendered. The Civil War was over. Lincoln tried to convince former enemies that they should live in peace. But this great man had ruthless enemies. On April 14, 1865, during a theatrical performance in Washington, Lincoln was mortally wounded by a southern conspirator, an actor who supported the South and was angry over the South’s defeat. Early the next morning Lincoln died.

More than 600 000 soldiers died during the war. The period after the Civil War (1865 - 1877) was called **Reconstruction**. Many Southerners couldn’t see any good in this Reconstruction. Secret societies such as the **Ku Klux Klan** were formed. The Klan started in Tennessee in 1866. Members wore hoods. The Klan was against everyone and everything connected with Reconstruction. They beat and killed blacks. They burnt their schools and churches. The actions of the Klan drew so much attention that federal laws were passed.

From 1890 to 1901 Southern states took steps to stop most blacks from voting. All voters had to pay a poll tax. Many blacks were too poor. All voters had to show they could read and understand the state constitution. Blacks also lost the right to use public places, such as trains, streetcars, hotels, theatres and restaurants.

The North and South stopped arguing in the 1890s over rights for blacks. The nation was reunited. The Civil War, 1861 – 1865, had made clear that one part of the country couldn't pull out and form another country. The USA was firmly one nation indivisible.

Franklin D. Roosevelt: 32nd President (1933-1945)

FDI

Franklin Delano Roosevelt was a Democratic politician who became the 32 US President, also known informally as FDI, and the only one to be elected four times. From 1921 when he was 39 he suffered from polio (=a serious disease affecting the nervous system) and could hardly walk without help. He fought to regain the use of his legs, particularly through swimming. At the 1924 Democratic Convention he dramatically appeared on crutches. In 1928 Roosevelt became Governor of New York.



Born in 1882 at Hyde Park, New York – now a national historic site – he attended Harvard University and Columbia Law School. On St. Patrick's Day, 1905, he married Eleanor Roosevelt.

Following the example of his cousin, President Theodore Roosevelt, whom he greatly admired, Franklin D. Roosevelt entered public service through politics, but as a Democrat. He won election to the New York Senate in 1910.

He was elected President in November 1932. When he became President, millions of Americans were out of work, poor and homeless. And there was no end in sight to their suffering. In his first speech FDR gave hope. "This Great Nation will endure as it has endured, will revive and, and will prosper," he said. "...the only thing we have to fear is fear itself."

Roosevelt charged into the job, starting many programs that gave people a 'new deal' and put them to work. 'New Deal Program' helped the US to recover from the **Great**

Depression¹. His wife, Eleanor, worked tirelessly to help the poor and inspired many Americans to do the same. But businessmen and bankers were turning more and more against Roosevelt's New Deal Program. They feared his experiments and disliked the concessions to labour. Roosevelt responded with a new program of reform: Social Security, heavier taxes on the wealthy, new controls over banks and public utilities, and an enormous work relief program for the unemployed.

Notes

Great Depression¹ – is the period of severe economic failure in most countries of the world that lasted from 1929 until World War II. It began in the US when the New York Stock Exchange fell on 29 October 1929, known as 'Black Tuesday'. Many businesses and banks failed and millions of people lost their jobs.

After four years, things seemed to be improving. In 1936 he was re-elected. In his second term, however, a new war broke out in Europe when Hitler's Nazi Germany invaded Poland. Even though the USA stayed out of the war at first, their factories got busy making weapons and supplies to help their friends England, France and others. And more Americans were working.

When the Japanese attacked American ships anchored at Pearl Harbour, Hawaii, on December 7, 1941, the USA entered World War II and fought for the next four years. FDR was a true commander-in-chief, studying battle plans, appointing field commanders and, using the radio to talk to Americans, kept the nation solidly behind the war.

FDR was the only physically disabled president, but he got around with crutches, and eventually in a wheelchair. Most people didn't know about his condition.

When FDR died suddenly of a brain hemorrhage on April 12, 1945, the country was at work again, Victory in the Second World War was just around the corner, and the United States had a new place of respect in the world. He died as one of the most beloved, admired, and respected leaders in history.



Feeling that the future peace of the world would depend upon relations between the United States and Russia, he devoted much thought to the planning of a United Nations, in which, he hoped, international difficulties could be settled.

In 1997, a memorial to him was unveiled on the Mall in the nation's capital. Only three other presidents have been given the same honour: Washington, Jefferson, and Lincoln.

John F. Kennedy: 35th President (1961-1963)

Jack

‘And so, my fellow Americans: ask not what your country can do for you – ask what you can do for your country.’

John Fitzgerald Kennedy was the country's youngest president and the first Roman Catholic ever to be elected. He was also known informally as Jack Kennedy and JFK. President for only 1 000 days before a gunman ended his young life, Jack Kennedy left one of the most lasting impressions of any president in history. Handsome, charming, with an eloquence of an actor, he inspired a whole generation to take up the challenges of a ‘New Frontier.’ The glamour and idealism of his presidency earned him the nickname ‘Camelot’, after King Arthur mythical court. Of



Irish descent, he was born in Brookline, Massachusetts, in a rich family, on May 29, 1917. Graduated from Harvard in 1940, he entered the Navy. Kennedy was a captain of a small PT (patrol torpedo) boat in the Pacific during World War II. One night, while the boat drifted and the crew slept, a Japanese destroyer rammed the PT boat and the whole crew went into the water. Kennedy led his men on a three-mile swim through shark-infested waters to safety, towing a wounded crewman by holding the strap from his life vest in his teeth.

Kennedy came home a hero and went into politics. He became a Democratic Congressman from the Boston area, advancing in 1953 to the Senate. He married Jacqueline Bouvier on September 12, 1953. After serving in Congress, he became the youngest man ever to run for president, and he won in 1961. His Inaugural Address offered the memorable injunction: ask not what your country can do for you – ‘ask what you can do for your country.’ He asked the world, including the enemies, to never give up on peace.

JFK passed a law giving equal rights to minorities and created the Peace Corps, which sent Americans to work for free in poor foreign countries. He promised to put a man on the Moon within nine years. He also started putting troops into a small country in Asia called Vietnam.

Kennedy’s greatest success as President was in dealing with the **Cuban missile crisis**¹ and his worst failure was over **the Bay of Pigs**² incident.

In an event that still shocks and saddens the world, President Kennedy was assassinated probably by lone gunman Lee Harvey Oswald in Dallas, Texas, on November 22, 1963. Some people believe that others were responsible for his murder, but nothing has ever been definitely proved.

Notes

Cuban missile crisis¹ – it was a dangerous political situation that developed in 1962 between the US and USSR. President Kennedy became aware that there were Soviet nuclear weapons in Cuba and sent US Navy to stop Soviet ships from bringing more. It seemed possible that there would be a nuclear war between the two countries, but the Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev ordered the Russian ships to turn back and later removed all of the weapons.

the Bay of Pigs² – is a bay on the south-west coast of Cuba, where in 1961 about 1500 Cuban exiles landed in an attempt to end the rule of Fidel Castro. The attempt failed, causing great embarrassment to the US President Kennedy and making Castro’s position stronger than ever.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

1. roughhouse – грубое отношение
2. secession – отделение (от страны)

3. *-abolitionist* – сторонник отмены
4. *-unexcelled* – непревзойдённый
5. *-unanimously* – единогласно
6. *-ruthless* – беспощадный
7. *-indivisible* – неделимый
8. *-vitality* – жизнеспособность
9. *-scrawny* – тощий
10. *-to pick on* – придирааться, дразнить
11. *-to herd cattle* – пасти скот
12. *-to chase* – преследовать
13. *-outlaw* – преступник
14. *-sweetheart* – возлюбленная
15. *-hand-picked* – тщательно подобранный
16. *-prospector* – (золото) искатели, исследователи
17. *-vigorously* – решительно
18. *-to cheat* – мошенничать
19. *-to regain* – восстановить
20. *-crutches* – костыли
21. *-to endure* – выдержать
22. *-concession* – уступка
23. *-utilities* – коммунальные предприятия
24. *-hemorrhage* – кровоизлияние
25. *-eloquence* – красноречие, ораторское искусство
26. *-to ram* – врезаться
27. *-to tow* – тянуть на верёвке, взять на буксир
28. *-life vest* – спасательный жилет
29. *-strap* – ремешок
30. *-injunction* – приказ, указание
31. *-missile* – ракета
32. *-Bay of Pigs* – залив Кочинос

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

1. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. *Why is A. Lincoln regarded as America's greatest president?*
2. *What did you know about A. Lincoln's biography?*
3. *How did Lincoln's political life begin?*
4. *Why was A. Lincoln reelected unanimously President in 1864? Why did he become so popular? What was his nickname? Why?*
5. *Why did A. Lincoln die? What happened?*
6. *How was the period of Reconstruction developing after the Civil War? Did the North and South stop arguing?*

7. *What did you know about T. Roosevelt's young years?*
8. *How did he enter politics?*
9. *What did he do as President? What was his nickname? Why?*
10. *Why was he called 'near great' President?*
11. *Why was T. Roosevelt given the Nobel Peace Prize?*
12. *What did you know about a private life of F. Roosevelt?*
13. *How did he enter politics?*
14. *Why were his programs so popular?*
15. *How did F. Roosevelt win the Great Depression?*
16. *Was he a true commander-in-chief? Why?*
17. *Why did Americans love and respect F. Roosevelt?*
18. *Where was he buried? Why?*
19. *What did you know about biographical facts of J. Kennedy?*
20. *What was his nickname? Why?*
21. *How did J. Kennedy go into politics?*
22. *How did he solve the world problems? What was Kennedy's greatest success as President?*
23. *What happened to Kennedy? Why did he die?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. **Джон Адамс** (1797 – 1801, **2 president**) по утрам купался голышом в реке и проходил 10 лет в одном костюме.
2. Президент **Томас Джефферсон** (1801-1809, **3 president**) сам придумал дизайн и текст для своего надгробного камня.
3. При **Томасе Джефферсоне** в США существовал запрет на игру в бильярд, но в доме президента была бильярдная комната.
4. **Эндрю Джексон** (1865-1869) был **7-м президентом США** и одним из основателей Демократической партии. Портрет Джексона можно увидеть на 20-долларовой купюре, а в полный рост и на коне – рядом с Белым домом.
5. Памятник президенту **Эндрю Джексону** в Вашингтоне был создан в 1852 году и стал первой в мире конной статуей, имеющей две точки опоры. Генерал Джексон изображен на вздыбленном коне во время боя за Новый Орлеан. Вокруг памятника установлены 4 пушки XIX века.
6. Президент США **Эндрю Джонсон** никогда не учился в школе. Грамоте его обучила жена.
7. **Эндрю Джексон** был ранен в грудь во время дуэли, но врачи не смогли вытащить пулю и президент прожил с ней всю жизнь.

8. Самый короткий срок президентства был у **Уильяма Гаррисона** (март-апрель 1841, **9 president**): страдавший целым букетом болезней Гаррисон вступил в должность 4 марта 1841 года, а уже 4 апреля умер.
9. **Джон Тайлер** (1841-1845, **10 president**) был самым многодетным президентом в истории США. У него было 8 детей от первой жены, и 7 – от второй. Его 15-й ребенок родился, когда президенту было за семьдесят.
10. Впервые официальный президентский гимн «Hail to the Chief» был исполнен перед появлением на публике президента Соединенных Штатов Америки **Джона Тейлора**.
11. Президентский срок **Джеймса Нокса Полка** (1845-1849, **11 president**) ознаменовался крупнейшими территориальными приобретениями США. Были завоёваны у Мексики Нью-Мексико и Калифорния в ходе Американо-мексиканской войны и уступлен Англией Орегон. Соединённые Штаты обрели выход ко второму океану и стали крупной тихоокеанской державой. Современные историки обычно включают Полка в десятку самых выдающихся президентов США.
12. Был среди президентов США и один холостяк – **Джеймс Бьюкенен** (1857-1861, **15 president**). Во время приемов в Белом Доме роль первой леди исполняла его племянница.
13. Консенсус историков считал **Бьюкенена** худшим из президентов США за всю историю. Этот взгляд, впрочем, оспаривается некоторыми авторами.
14. Самым высоким американским президентом был **Авраам Линкольн** (1861-1865, **16 president**) – его рост составлял 193 сантиметра, а самым низким Джеймс Мэдисон (1809-1817) – его рост составлял 163 сантиметра.
15. **Улисс Грант** (1869-1877, **18 president**) баловал себя сигарами, выкуривая их по 20 в день, и умер от рака горла.
16. Президент **Джеймс Абрахам Гарфилд** (1881, **20 president**) мог одновременно одной рукой писать на латыни, а другой – на греческом. Был тяжело ранен через три месяца после вступления в должность и умер через два с половиной месяца от последствий неудачного лечения.
17. **Теодор Рузвельт** (1901-1909, **26 president**) был первым главой США, который объехал все, существовавшие тогда 48 штатов. Кроме того, Теодор Рузвельт стал первым президентом, который совершил полет на самолете – причем полет состоялся на одной из самых первых моделей самолета.
18. **Уильям Говард Тафт** (1909-1913, **27 president**). Президентство Тафта охарактеризовалось некоторым усилением роли государства в экономике. Тафт был избран Председателем Верховного суда США, став единственным президентом, который занимал пост в этом суде.

19. Дольше всех президентский пост занимал **Франклин Делано Рузвельт** (1933-1945, **32 president**). Он был единственным, кто побеждал на выборах четыре раза.
20. **Гарри Трумэн** (1945-1953, **33 president**) отдал приказ об атомной бомбардировке Хиросимы и Нагасаки. Один из инициаторов создания НАТО (National Atlantic Treaty Organization, NATO).
21. У **Гарри Трумэна** была ручная коза, которая паслась на лужайке перед Белым Домом.
22. **Дуайт Дэвид Эйзенхауэр** (1953-1961, **34 president**) положил конец войне в Корее и стремился возобновить советско-американские встречи на высшем уровне.
23. **Джон Кеннеди** (1961-1963, **35 president**) стал миллионером в возрасте 21 года.
24. **Джон Кеннеди** был самым молодым президентом на момент избрания (43 с половиной года). Джон Кеннеди также был первым в истории США бойскаутом, ставшим президентом.
25. Самыми богатыми президенты США — **Джордж Вашингтон** и **Джон Кеннеди**. Состояние Вашингтона (плантации, недвижимое имущество и т.д.) могут быть оценены в \$900 млн. по нынешнему курсу; состояние Кеннеди, доставшееся ему от родителей, составляет примерно \$850 млн (по версии журнала *Forbes*). Один из самых бедных президентов США – **Эндрю Джонсон**.
26. **Ричард Никсон** (1969-1974, **37 president**) стал первым президентом, который посетил СССР и Китай.
27. **Ричард Никсон** - единственный президент США, досрочно прекративший свои полномочия и подавший в отставку. Во время его правления американские астронавты высадились на Луну.
28. Единственным в истории Соединенных Штатов президентом, занявшим этот пост невыборным путем, был **Джеральд Форд** (1974-1977, **38 president**). Он стал президентом после ухода в отставку Ричарда Никсона.
29. **Джим Картер** (1977-1981, **39 president**) очень любил кресла-качалки и специально заказал в Белый Дом таких целых пять штук. Также он единственный из президентов издал несколько романов.
30. **Билл Клинтон** (1993-2001, **42 president**) совершил больше всего зарубежных поездок – он побывал в 133 странах.
31. Президент **Билл Клинтон** при рождении получил имя Вильям Джефферсон Блайт, но в 15 лет взял фамилию своего отчима, когда мать вступила в новый брак.

32. В свое время **Билл Клинтон** распорядился создать для своего кота персональный сайт.
33. **Барак Обама** (2009-2017, 44 *president*) является большим поклонником историй о Гарри Потере и прочитал всю серию книг. Кроме того, он является уже 27-ым по счету президентом США, имеющим образование адвоката. В 2006 году, задолго до своего президентства, Обама получил награду «Грэмми» за аудиовersion своей книги «Мечты моего отца».
34. Больше всего президентов дал США штат Огайо (семь). На втором месте – Нью Йорк (шесть), на третьем – Вирджиния (пять), далее – Массачусетс (четыре), Техас, Теннесси и Калифорния (по три). Из родного штата Барака Обамы Иллинойс был президент — Авраам Линкольн.
35. **Дональд Трамп** (45 президент) никогда не употреблял алкоголь и не курил. Дональд Трамп увлекается игрой в гольф. Он является членом клуба *Winged Foot Golf Club*, штат Нью-Йорк, а также регулярно участвует в соревнованиях на своих площадках.

PART III

UNIT III

THE ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

Lesson 1

CANADA

LAND OF DIVERSITY

Basic Facts

Official name: Canada

Status: Confederation, democracy under constitutional monarchy

Monarch: Elizabeth II

Head of State and Government: Prime Minister, Governor General

Motto: "A Mari Usque Ad Mare" (Latin) - "From Sea to Sea"

Anthem: "O Canada"

Royal anthem: "God Save the Queen"

Legislative body: Legislature Parliament consisting of Upper house – Senate, Lower house - House of Commons

Establishment from the United Kingdom: Constitution Act July 1, 1867

Capital: Ottawa

Largest city: Toronto

Nationality: Canadian

Population: 35 million

Official languages: English · French

Currency: Canadian dollar (\$)

Languages: There are two state languages: English and French. English is spoken by 60 % of population; French is spoken by 23 % of people. All Canadian children have to learn both French and English at school, but Francophones and Anglophones do not enjoy learning each other's language. Still, most Quebecois middle class families, living in Montreal are bilingual - they speak English and French equally well.

National symbols

National symbols of Canada are the symbols that are used in Canada and abroad to represent the country and its people.

National Flag

The National flag of Canada was officially adopted and inaugurated in the year 1965 after several years of political debate over the flag's design. The National flag holds a special place of honor as one of the foremost national symbols of Canada and therefore treated with much reverence. Canada's official National flag is colored red and white, the country's official colors, and its center bears a maple leaf which is Canada's traditional emblem.



The Crown

The Crown symbolizes the Canadian monarchy, and appears on the coat-of-arms (used by parliamentarians and government ministries), the flag of the Governor General, the coats-of-arms of many provinces and territories; the badges of several federal departments, the Canadian Forces, Royal Military College of Canada, Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP), many regiments, and other police forces; on buildings, as well as some highway signs and licence plates. Also, the Queen's image appears in Canadian government buildings, military installations and schools; and on Canadian stamps, \$20 bank notes, and all coins.

National Anthem

“O Canada” was officially declared the National anthem of Canada on 1st July, 1980, a century after it was first sung in 1880. The original lyrics of the anthem were written in French by Sir Adolphe-Basile Routhier and the music was composed by Calixa Lavallée. Over the subsequent years, several English versions of the anthem were also

created. The official English version of the anthem was written by Mr. Justice Robert Stanley Weir. As a National symbol of the country, “O Canada” is sung at sporting events, school assemblies and other formal occasions of national importance.

Coat-of-Arms

Canada's National Coat-of-Arms closely resembles the Royal-Coat-of Arms of the United Kingdom with the exception of the additional maple leaves around its edges. The Coat-of-Arms is widely used for official purpose like classifying the minister and their offices, institutions of parliamentary secretaries and also the institutions with quasi-judicial functions. Besides, the symbol of the Coat-of-Arms also appears on official documents like the passports.



National Tree

The National Tree is **maple**. The history of the **maple leaf** as a symbol of Canada can be traced back as early as 1700. As Canada's National emblem, the maple leaf appears on the national flag and coins and for many years it was used as a symbol of the Canadian Armed Forces. The maple leaf attained official status subsequent to the adoption of the new National flag of Canada which bears the leaf in its center.

National Animals

Canada is known for its vast forests and mountain ranges and the animals that reside within them, such as moose, beaver, caribou, polar bears, grizzly bears, Canada goose, Canada Lynx, and the common loon. **Beavers** are considered the national mammal of Canada, and **loon** the national bird. The beaver's emblematic status originated from the fact much of Canada's early economic history was tied to the fur trade in beaver fur, used to make hats fashionable in Europe. Another reason for the beaver's status in Canadian



heraldry is that it is symbolic of industry, due to its habit of constructing dams and lodges. Beavers appear on the reverse of some Canadian coins.

The Canadian Horse is an official Canadian symbol and commonly appears in images with the Mounties. The officer cadets of the Royal Military College of Canada are normally represented in their distinctive scarlett uniform with a ceremonial sword or swagger stick.

National Sport

Additional national symbols include the RCMP and anything pertaining to **ice hockey**, Canada's official winter sport, and **lacrosse**, Canada's official summer sport which are often used as **national symbols of unity and pride**.

National Drink



In recent years, other symbols have become a source of pride: notably, the 'I Am Canadian' campaign by **Molson beer**, most notably the commercial featuring Joe Canadian, infused home-grown beer with nationalism. (Molson later merged with an American beer company, Coors.) The Canadian fashion retailer Roots sells a variety of merchandise designed to evoke nationalistic sentiment.

The Largest cities of Canada

Major Cities: Ottawa, Toronto, Montreal, Quebec City, Vancouver, Calgary, Halifax, Winnipeg, Hamilton, Regina, Edmonton, London, St. John's, Victoria, Windsor

Other Cities: Antigonish, Brampton, Brantford, Charlottetown, Dawson, Fredericton, Gander, Guelph, Kingston, Kitchener, Medicine Hat, Niagara Falls, Niagara-on-the-lake, North Bay, Oakville, Oshawa, Peterborough, Prince Albert, Prince George, Saint Catherines, Saint John, Saskatoon, Sault Sainte Marie, Stratford, Sudbury, Thetford Mines, Thompson, Thunder Bay, Trois Rivières, Whitehorse, Yellowknife

Ottawa

Ottawa (from an Indian word meaning "near the water") is a clean, attractive, modern city at the junction of the Ottawa, Rideau, and Gatineau Rivers, about 60 miles north of the New York State border and 120 miles west of Montreal. It was selected as the national capital by **Queen Victoria** in 1888. City residents total over 400,000, and the total metropolitan population is over one million. The climate is healthful and bracing, and the area abounds with opportunities for outdoor activities and family living.

As Canada's capital, Ottawa's main business is government and, as in Washington, DC, little industry exists. Living conditions are similar to those in comparably sized U.S. cities, although social life is geared to demands of diplomatic and government circles. During summer, there is a flow of U.S. tourists through the city, and all year government officials and business representatives visit Ottawa in their respective roles.

The diplomatic community is large and growing. Some 146 nations maintain relations with Canada, although only 100 have resident missions in Ottawa. Most are small, with two or three officers and a chief of mission. The only large missions are those of the U.S., U.K., Russia, France, Germany, and the People's Republic of China.

Washington, DC and Baltimore, Maryland airports are connected to Ottawa by direct air service. Washington, DC is about 600 miles by road from Ottawa, via excellent interstate highways. New York City can be reached in one day by car and is about 455 miles from Ottawa, also via interstate highways.

Entertainment

Ottawa offers a wide variety of entertainment. **The National Arts Center** is a cultural center of the first rank, where national and international stars, orchestras, and ballet and theatrical troupes perform regularly. The Ottawa **Little Theater**, with a cast of amateur players, offers a full season of plays. Ottawa now has some 20 movie houses, and an active National Film Theater whose thrice-weekly showings of classic and foreign films attract crowds of movie buffs to the auditorium in the Public Archives.

The National Gallery of Canada owns and displays a small but excellent collection of European and Canadian paintings, and a small group of contemporary

American art. Special exhibits are scheduled throughout the year; the opening ceremonies and receptions are well-attended social events. The gallery also sponsors film shows and art lectures.

In Ottawa there are several **museums of interest**, including the **Museum of Science and Industry**, with unique viewer-participation exhibits especially recommended for school-age children; **the Museum of Man**; **the Bytown Museum** (natural history); and **Laurier House** (former residence of Canadian prime ministers).

Tours of the Parliament buildings are conducted daily throughout the year. During the summer there are sight-seeing tours and moonlight cruises on the Rideau Canal and the Ottawa River. **Tours of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police headquarters, the Queen's Printer, the Royal Canadian Mint**, and other government agencies can be arranged upon request.

The number and quality of **Ottawa's restaurants** has been rising, and ethnic cuisine is available in a range of prices. Dancing is provided nightly in hotels, in the National Arts Center, and in several of the nightclubs in town and across the Ottawa River in Hull, Quebec.

Annual events of interest are the **Winterlude Festival** in February; the **Tulip Festival** in the latter half of May; and the **Central Canada Exhibition**, a week-long country fair held each September.

Because of the absence of a language barrier and the openness of Canadian society, Americans blend easily into the local scene. Ottawa has a number of social clubs and public activities which provide opportunities for contact with Canadians. These include an **International Women's Club**; **Boy and Girl Scout groups**; and a number of civic organizations.

Toronto

Toronto and Montreal, Canada's two largest urban centers, are both close to Ottawa—Toronto is 275 miles to the west, and Montreal 120 miles to the east. Toronto, five hours away by road and rail and 55 minutes by air, is the business center of Canada.

Here, visitors find a wide variety of reasonable hotel accommodations, extensive shopping facilities, museums, restaurants, and a lively theater district.

Toronto, Canada's largest city, occupies the site of an old French trading post, Fort Rouillé founded in the 1790s. The city was founded as a British Army garrison town, Fort York, on the shores of Lake Ontario in 1793. It succeeded Niagara-on-the-Lake as capital of Upper Canada in 1797. Chartered as a city in 1834, its name was then changed to Toronto. Toronto served as the country's capital from 1849 to 1851, and from 1855 to 1859.

The Municipality of Metropolitan Toronto consists of the city of Toronto and five boroughs, with an estimated population of 4.7 million (2000), and covering an area of about 625 square miles. It is a beautiful city of parks and trees with a mixture of old and new buildings, connected by an excellent network of roads. Tall construction has been kept to a minimum, creating a feeling of spaciousness. The city is **the capital** of the **Province of Ontario**, the most populous and industrialized province in Canada. Toronto is the commercial, financial, and industrial center of Canada. With the opening of the St. Lawrence Seaway, Toronto has become an important shipping center with modern harbor facilities. It is also one of Canada's principal aviation and railway focal points. This area is said to contain the largest concentration of American-owned or American-controlled plants in any consular district outside the U.S.

Toronto is the headquarters of the Canadian book and magazine publishing industry, three large daily newspapers, and English-language radio and TV broadcasting. It is the center of English-speaking culture in Canada.

An estimated 200,000 U.S. citizens live in the district; many are dual nationals. In addition, tens of thousands of Americans visit the city annually.

Entertainment

Toronto does not lack cultural or entertainment activities, and offers everything normally found in a cosmopolitan city of comparable size.

Toronto's concert hall, **Massey Hall**, a venerable old building with near-perfect acoustics, housed the Toronto Symphony Orchestra until the Roy Thomson Hall was opened.

Jazz, folk music, chamber music, and numerous smaller professional and amateur theatrical groups can be found throughout Toronto. The city is purported to be the third most important **center for theater** in the world, after New York and London. There are also many fine restaurants of every cuisine, cocktail lounges, coffee shops, and nightclubs to suit every taste.

The Royal Ontario Museum, the Ontario Art Gallery, the McLaughlin Planetarium, and the Ontario Science Centre provide many hours of interesting viewing.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- pertaining to* – в отношении, относительно
- maple* – клён, кленовый
- retailer* – розничный торговец
- merchandise* – товары, торговать на рынке
- evoke* – пробуждать чувства, вызывать восхищение
- swagger stick* - офицерская трость
- treachery* – измена, предательство
- refugee* – беженец
- domestic affairs* – внутренние дела, политика
- dominion* – владение
- profound* – кардинальный, чрезвычайный
- boreal* – северный, арктический
- encroachment* – агрессия, вторжение

Practice the following for pronunciation

Proper names: Baffin Bay, Davis Strait, Arctic Archipelago, Quebec, Inuit, Roman Catholic, Ottawa, Toronto, Montreal, Quebec City, Vancouver, Calgary, Halifax, Winnipeg, Hamilton, Regina, Edmonton, London, St. John's, Victoria, Windsor.

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. What are the main national symbols of Canada?*
- 2. What are the geographical and natural features of Canada?*
- 3. What are the main provinces and territories of Canada? How are they characterized?*
- 4. What are the main features of the National flag of Canada was officially adopted and inaugurated in the year 1965 after several years of political debate over the flag's design. What are the main natural features and climate of Canada?*
- 5. Who discovered and explored Canada? What are the main and historical periods?*
- 6. What is the type of the Canadian government?*
- 7. How is French Canada characterized?*
- 8. How has Canada developed economically and technologically?*
- 9. Who inhabited Canada? When did Europeans begin to settle in Canada?*
- 10. What is the racial and ethnic makeup of Canada?*
- 11. What is the largest religious community in Canada?*
- 12. What are the largest cities of Canada? What are the most interesting places to visit there?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

- 1. Первая Конная полиция в Канаде была сформирована в 1873 и насчитывала 9 человек.*
- 2. Столица Канады Оттава сначала называлась Байтаун в честь полковника Джона Бая, чей штаб располагался в этом месте во время строительства канала, соединившего реку Оттава с озером Онтарио.*
- 3. Канадцы сделали много важных для человечества изобретений, включая керосин, электронный микроскоп, электрический орган, инсулин, снегоход и электроплиту.*
- 4. Монреаль – это второй крупный франкоязычный город после Парижа.*
- 5. Оттава – политическая столица, Монреаль – столица французской культуры, моды и финансовая столица высокотехнологичной продукции. Торонто – столица английской культуры и финансовая столица Канады, столица торговых связей с Европой и США.*
- 6. Ванкувер – финансовая столица торговли валютой и драгоценными камнями. Виннипег – финансовая столица торговли сельскохозяйственной продукцией. Галифакс – финансовая столица торговли морепродуктами.*
- 7. В Канаде есть два памятника Льву Толстому.*
- 8. Нунавут – первое в Канаде административное образование коренного населения. Нунавут в переводе с эскимосского «наша земля».*
- 9. Остров Принца Эдуарда пользуется особенной популярностью из-за своих лучших на Атлантическом побережье песчаных пляжей.*

Lesson 2

AUSTRALIA

IDENTITY AND SPIRIT



Basic Facts

Official name: The Commonwealth of Australia

Status: Federal Parliamentary Constitutional Monarchy

Monarch: Elizabeth II

Head of State and Government: Governor-General, Prime Minister

Anthem: 'Advance Australia Fair' («Развивайся прекрасная Австралия»)

Royal anthem: "God Save the Queen"

Legislative body: Parliament consisting of Upper house – Senate, Lower house - House of Representatives

Independence from the United Kingdom: Constitution 1 January 1901

Capital: Canberra

Largest city: Sydney

Nationality: Australian

Population: 21 507 717

Official languages: English

Currency: Australian dollar (AUD)

Languages: English

National Symbols

The Australian National Flag

The Australian National Flag consists of three parts set on a blue field. The first part is the Union Jack, acknowledging the historical link with Britain. The second part is the Southern Cross (a constellation of stars only visible in the Southern Hemisphere), representing Australia's geographical location in the world. Finally, the Commonwealth Star represents Australia's federal system of government. Originally, the Commonwealth

Star had six points (for the six states), but in 1908 a seventh point was added to represent the Territories of the Commonwealth of Australia.

Australian National Anthem

“Advance Australia Fair” was one of many Australian nationalistic songs written in the late-nineteenth century as debates about the creation of the new nation were taking place in the different colonies. Although it is thought to have been first performed in 1878 by Mr Andrew Fairfax in Sydney, possibly the most significant early performance of Advance Australia Fair was at the inauguration of the Commonwealth of Australia in 1901, where it was sung by a choir of 10,000. Advance Australia Fair was not considered the national anthem, however, with this role going to the British anthem God Save the Queen for most of the twentieth century.

Commonwealth Coat of Arms



The Commonwealth Coat of Arms is the formal symbol of the Commonwealth of Australia and its ownership and authority. King Edward VII made the first official grant of a coat of arms to the Commonwealth of Australia in a Royal Warrant dated 7 May 1908. The absence of specific references to the states in the shield in the 1908 Arms led to a number of alterations approved on the recommendation of the Commonwealth Government by King George V. King

George V granted the second Commonwealth Coat of Arms in a Royal Warrant dated 19 September 1912. Symbols of Australia's six states appear together on the shield, which is the central feature of a coat of arms. The border of the shield symbolizes federation. The kangaroo and emu are the native animals that hold the shield with pride.

A gold Commonwealth Star sits above the shield. Six of the star's points represent the Australian states. The seventh point represents the territories. A wreath of gold and blue sits under the Commonwealth Star. Gold and blue are the Commonwealth Coat of Arms' livery or identifying colours.

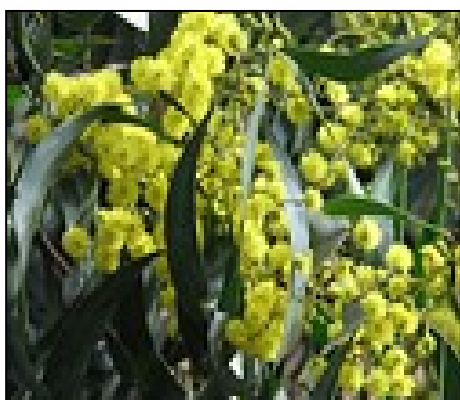
Australia's floral emblem, the golden wattle, frames the shield and supporters. A scroll contains the word Australia'.

Australia's national colours

Australia's national colours, green and gold, were popular and well loved by Australians long before they were officially proclaimed by the Governor-General on 19 April 1984. At international sporting events since before Federation, and of course at many since, the colours have been associated with the achievements of many great Australian sports men and women.

As well as instilling national pride on the field, spectators often also don the official colours and cheer their team waving green and gold boxing kangaroo flags. Back home in Australia, the green triangle and gold kangaroo of the Australian Made logo is the most recognized country of origin symbol on Australian shop shelves.

Australia's floral emblem



The golden wattle, *Acacia pycnantha*, Australia's national floral emblem, encapsulates the spirit of the Australian bush. The shrub or small tree grows in the understorey of open forest, woodland and in open scrub in South Australia, Victoria, New South Wales and the Australian Capital Territory. Like all emblems and symbols, the golden wattle captures an essence of Australia that brings the colours, smells and textures of the Australian bush alive.

The flower has long been recognised as Australia's premier floral symbol and was officially proclaimed in 1988. In 1912, on the recommendation of the Prime Minister, the Hon. Andrew Fisher MP, wattle was included as the decoration surrounding the Commonwealth Coat of Arms and it has also been used in the design of Australian stamps and many awards in the Australian honours system.

Golden wattle was honoured further with the proclamation in 1992 that 1 September in each year be observed as National Wattle Day. This day provides an opportunity for all

Australians to celebrate our floral heritage, particularly through the planting of an Acacia species suitable for the area in which they live.

Australia's national gemstone

The opal is a rare and beautiful precious stone. A very special series of geographical and climatic phenomena need to coincide for the opal to form. The great desert regions of central Australia provide such conditions and Australia produces over 90 per cent of the world's precious opal. Australia 's precious opals include the black opal (produced in Lightning Ridge, New South Wales), white opal (majority of the world's production occurs in Coober Pedy, South Australia), crystal opal and boulder opal (mined in Central Queensland). The precious stone was proclaimed Australia's national gemstone on 28 July 1993. In Aboriginal legend, the mesmerising opal was a gift from the sky, from a rainbow that had touched the earth and created the colours of the opal.

Population

Australia's first inhabitants, the Aboriginal people, are believed to have migrated from some unknown point in Asia to Australia between 50,000 and 60,000 years ago. While Captain James Cook is credited with Australia's European discovery in 1770, a Portuguese possibly first sighted the country, while the Dutch are known to have explored the coastal regions in the 1640s.

The first European settlement of Australia was in January 1788, when the First Fleet sailed into Botany Bay under the command of Captain Arthur Phillip. Originally established as a penal colony, by the 1830s the number of free settlers was increasing.

The first colony New South Wales was settled as a penal colony – a place where Britain could send convicted criminals because its prisons were overcrowded. Many convicts had grown up in poverty and committed only minor offences, such as the theft of a loaf of bread. Conditions in the new colony were little better than at home – it took many years for British settlers to understand the different environment of the new colony, and disease and malnutrition were widespread during the first decades of settlement. Convicts formed the majority of the colony's population for the first few decades of settlement. Convicts continued being sent to New South Wales until 1823, although as time went by,

convicts were increasingly seen as a source of labour to build the colony, rather than just being sent away from Britain as punishment for their crimes. Transportation of convicts to the eastern colonies was abolished in 1852 and to the western colonies in 1868. The population grew steadily in subsequent decades; the continent was explored and an additional five self-governing Crown Colonies were established.

For at least 40,000 years before the first British settlement in the late 18th century, Australia was inhabited by indigenous Australians, who spoke languages grouped into roughly 250 language groups.

As of October 2012, Australia's population is roughly 22.7 million people. The most populous states are New South Wales and Victoria, with their respective capitals, Sydney and Melbourne, the largest cities in Australia. Australia's population is concentrated along the coastal region of Australia from Adelaide to Cairns. The centre of Australia is sparsely populated. Australia is one of the most ethnically diverse societies in the world today. Almost one in four Australian residents were born outside of Australia and many more are first or second generation Australians, the children and grandchildren of recently arrived migrants and refugees.

This wide variety of backgrounds, together with the culture of Indigenous Australians who have lived on the Australian continent for more than 50,000 years, have helped create a uniquely Australian identity and spirit.

Today, Indigenous people make up 2.4 per cent of the total Australian population (about 460,000 out of 22 million people).

The government implemented migration schemes that actively sought first British, then European migrants. Since then, the face of Australia has changed remarkably. While large numbers of migrants have continued to come from traditional sources like the United Kingdom and New Zealand, there have been large numbers of people from countries as diverse as Italy, Greece, China, Vietnam and Lebanon. Their contribution to Australian society, culture and prosperity has been an important factor in shaping the modern Australia.

Population today

Australia's population today is roughly 22 million people. The country's vast openness means it has the lowest population density in the world - only two people per square kilometre. English is the spoken language in Australia, although some of the surviving Aboriginal communities maintain their native languages, and a considerable number of first and sometimes second-generation migrants are bilingual.

By the late 20th century many inhabitants were of Greek, Italian or Asian descent. In common with many other developed countries, Australia is currently experiencing a demographic shift towards an older population, with more people retiring and fewer people of working age.

Because of the ageing population, Australia maintains one of the most active immigration programs in the world, absorbing tens of thousands of immigrants from all over the world every year. Most permanent resident visas are granted on the basis of professional skills or family associations.

Religion

Australia has no state religion; Section 116 of the Australian Constitution prohibits the federal government from making any law to establish any religion, impose any religious observance, or prohibit the free exercise of any religion. In the 2011 census, 61.1 per cent of Australians were counted as Christian, including 25.3 per cent as Roman Catholic and 17.1 per cent as Anglican. 22.3 per cent of the population reported having "no religion", 7.2 per cent identify with non-Christian religions, the largest of these being Buddhism (2.5 per cent), followed by Islam (2.2 per cent), Hinduism (1.3 per cent) and Judaism (0.5 per cent).

Culture

Australian culture is as broad and varied as the country's landscape. Australia is multicultural and multiracial and this is reflected in the country's food, lifestyle and cultural practices and experience. Australia has 19 listed World Heritage properties. Australia is also famous for its landmark buildings, its ancient geology.

The largest cities

Canberra

Canberra is the capital city of Australia. With a population of 381,488, it is Australia's largest inland city and the eighth-largest city overall. The city is located at the northern end of the Australian Capital Territory (ACT), 280 km (170 mi) south-west of Sydney, and 660 km (410 mi) north-east of Melbourne. A resident of Canberra is known as a "Canberran".

The site of Canberra was selected for the location of the nation's capital in 1908 as a compromise between rivals Sydney and Melbourne, Australia's two largest cities. It is unusual among Australian cities, being an entirely planned city outside of any state, similar to the American Federal District of Columbia.

The city's design was influenced by the garden city movement and incorporates



significant areas of natural vegetation that have earned Canberra the title of the "bush capital". The growth and development of Canberra were hindered by the World Wars and the Great Depression, which exacerbated a series of planning disputes and the ineffectiveness of a procession of bodies that were created in turn to oversee the development of the city. The national capital emerged as a thriving city after World War II.

As the seat of the government of Australia, Canberra is the site of Parliament House, the High Court and numerous government departments and agencies. It is also the location of many social and cultural institutions of national significance, such as **the Australian War Memorial, Australian National University, Australian Institute of Sport, National Gallery, National Museum and the National Library**. The Australian Army's officer corps are trained at the Royal Military College, Duntroon and the Australian Defence Force Academy is also located in the capital.

Lake Burley Griffin is the site of the Captain James Cook Memorial and the National Carillon. Other sites of interest include the Black Mountain Tower, the Australian National Botanic Gardens, the National Zoo and Aquarium, the National Dinosaur Museum and Questacon – the National Science and Technology Centre.

As Australia's capital, Canberra is the most important centre for much of Australia's political reportage and thus all the major media, including the Australian Broadcasting Corporation, the commercial television networks, and the metropolitan newspapers maintain local bureaus.

Sydney

Sydney is the state capital of New South Wales and the most populous city in Australia. It is on Australia's south-east coast, on the Tasman Sea. In June 2010 the greater metropolitan area had an approximate population of 4.76 million people. Inhabitants of Sydney are called *Sydneysiders*, comprising a cosmopolitan and international population.

The site of the first British colony in Australia, Sydney was established in 1788 at Sydney Cove by Captain Arthur Phillip, of the First Fleet, as a penal colony. The city is built on hills surrounding one of the world's largest natural harbours, Port Jackson, which is commonly known as Sydney Harbour, where the iconic Sydney Opera House and the Harbour Bridge are prominent structures. The hinterland of the metropolitan area is surrounded by national parks, and the coastal regions feature many bays, rivers, inlets and beaches, including the famous Bondi and Manly beaches. Within the city are many

parklands, including Hyde Park and the Royal Botanic Gardens.



As a dynamic cultural hub, Sydney has many fine and internationally known museums, galleries and art spaces, such as the **Art Gallery** of New South Wales, the **Museum of**

Contemporary Art, the White Rabbit Gallery, Carriage Works, Brett Whiteley Studio, Museum of Sydney and the Powerhouse Museum, in addition to a thriving commercial gallery scene of contemporary art, mainly in the inner-city areas of Waterloo, Surry Hills, Darlinghurst, Paddington, Chippendale, Newtown and Woollahra.

Sydney hosts many different festivals and some of Australia's largest social and cultural events.

The Sydney Conservatorium of Music is one of the oldest and most prestigious music schools in Australia. Sydney's cultural institutions include the **Sydney's famous Opera House**. It has five halls, including a large concert hall and opera and drama theatres; it is the home of Opera Australia—the third-busiest opera company in the world, and the Sydney Symphony under the leadership of Vladimir Ashkenazy.

There have been many prominent films that have used Sydney as a filming location or setting including 'The Matrix', 'Mission Impossible 2', 'Australia', and so on.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to acknowledge – признавать, подтверждать
- hemisphere – полушарие
- warrant – указ
- alteration – изменение, перемена
- wreath – гирлянда, венок
- wattle – мимоза, австралийская акация
- instilling – внушающий
- to don – надевать
- to encapsulate – оформлять
- shrub, scrub – кустарник
- gemstone – драгоценный, полудрагоценный камень
- to coincide – соответствовать, совпадать
- boulder – булыжник
- mesmerizing – гипнотический
- penal – уголовный, наказуемый
- convict – каторжник, преступник
- override – отменять, аннулировать
- unicameral – однопалатный
- indigenous – аборигенный, туземный, местный
- malnutrition – недоедание

- semi-arid – засушливый, полупустынный
- heath – пустошь, поросшая вереском
- biota – флора и фауна
- anzac – солдат (австр.)
- corps – корпус, войсковое соединение

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. *What are the main national symbols of Australia?*
2. *What is the geographical position of Australia?*
3. *What are the main states of Australia?*
4. *Who discovered Australia? Who were the first inhabitants?*
5. *When was the first European settlement in Australia?*
6. *What is the main population of Australia?*
7. *What was the policy about immigration before the W.W.II? What is Australian's population today?*
8. *What is the climate, flora and fauna in Australia?*
9. *How does Australian's economic develop?*
10. *What is the state religion of Australia?*
11. *Why is Australia considered to be one of the most famous cultural centres?*
12. *What are the main public holidays in Australia? What are the typical national ones?*
13. *What are the largest cities in Australia?*
14. *What are the most interesting places of Canberra?*
15. *Why is Sydney the most populous city in Australia? What are the main sights of the city?*
16. *What is the history of Melbourne? Why is Melbourne often referred to as Australian's cultural capital?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. *Хотя Австралию называют «Зелёным континентом», на самом деле на её территории преобладают пустыни и полупустыни, русла пересыхающих рек и солёные озёра. Как показали исследования, 20 000 лет назад континент действительно был зелёным.*
2. *Первые люди, заселявшие Австралию, не имели сложной техники, не знали земледелия и скотоводства, зато постоянно использовали огонь.*

3. Национальный парк «Какаду» славится одной из самых богатых в мире «коллекций» **наскальных рисунков аборигенов**.
4. Большой Барьерный риф — одна из самых больших систем коралловых рифов во всем мире. Риф располагается в Коралловом море, вблизи северной границы материка. Он настолько велик, что его можно заметить даже из космоса — это самое большое в мире образование, созданное живыми организмами.
5. Национальный парк «Голубые горы в Австралии» — одно из самых живописнейших, а потому незабываемых мест в мире! Голубыми горы зовутся, потому что там они покрыты многочисленными каплями эвкалиптового масла с огромных эвкалиптов, которые придают им нежный голубой окрас.
6. В 2010 г. премьер-министр Австралии Кевин Радд принес официальные извинения коренным жителям Австралии за действия, которые совершили по отношению к аборигенам белые колонизаторы.
7. В настоящее время темпы роста численности аборигенов превышают средне-австралийские. Аборигены живут в отдаленных местностях и часто составляют там большинство населения.
8. Свыше 27% населения Северной территории приходится на долю аборигенов. Однако их уровень жизни ниже средне-австралийского. Немногие аборигены сохраняют жизненный уклад своих предков. Традиционные охота, рыболовство и собирательство утрачены.

Lesson 3

NEW ZEALAND

AS A UNIQUE ISELAND COUNTRY

Basic Facts

Official name: New Zealand

Monarch: Elizabeth II

Head of State: Governor-General, Prime Minister

Government: Unitary Parliamentary Constitutional Monarchy

Anthem: “God Defend New Zealand”

Royal anthem: “God Save the Queen”

Legislature: Parliament

Establishment from the United Kingdom: New Zealand Constitution Act January 17, 1853

Capital: Wellington

Largest city: Auckland

Population: 4,537,081

Official languages: English, Maori

Currency: New Zealand dollar (NZD)

National symbols

National Flag of New Zealand



The Flag of New Zealand bears striking similarity with Union Flag. It has four red stars with a white border. The stars represent the configuration of Crux, referred to as the Southern Cross, in New Zealand.

Coat of Arms of New Zealand



The Coat of Arms of New Zealand is regarded as the official symbol of New Zealand and was initially granted by King George V on 26th August 1911. Since 1911, the central shield has not been changed: while a quarter of the shield of four stars representing the Southern Cross constellation, is also seen in the national flag of the country. The golden fleece stands for the farming industry, while a wheat sheaf representing agriculture and the two hammers correspond to the mining activities and industrial development. A recent addition to it is that the shield is supported by two women on both sides of it holding the flag of New Zealand, and a warrior of Maori tribe having a taiaha.

God Defend New Zealand

Regarded as one of the national anthems of New Zealand, it has great significance in the lives of the citizens living in New Zealand. "God Defend New Zealand" was written in 1870 by Thomas Bracken, and music was composed by John Joseph Woods. Due to its increasing popularity in the 19th and 20th century, it was finally adapted as one of the national anthems of the country through a legal procedure.

Plant and Animal symbols

The small species of flightless birds form an invariable part of New Zealand's identity known as kiwi. Different scientific variations have been observed on the behavior of this species of birds after lots of research work. They also form an important part of rich traditional customs of New Zealand where nature is worshipped and apprehended as great



gift of God. Thus, these national symbols of New Zealand are a true representation of the life style of the people living there.



The Silver Fern symbol comes from the leaf of the New Zealand fern - (Ponga is the Maori name).

Widely recognized around the world the Silver Fern is representative of New Zealand and New Zealanders. It is an image to which all New Zealanders relate and is a powerful and emotional symbol of inspiration.

The Largest cities of New Zealand

Wellington



Wellington - New Zealand's capital city - is known as the nation's arts and culture capital. Although not the largest city in New Zealand, Wellington is famed for its lively down town cafés, shopping, nightlife and entertainment venues, and a dramatic harbour setting.

Wellington is New Zealand's political centre, housing **Parliament**, the head offices of all Government Ministries and Departments and the bulk of the foreign diplomatic missions in New Zealand.

Wellington has attractions for everyone, no matter what you're interested in. You can visit the Treaty of Waitangi in **Archives New Zealand**, where you can learn all about one of the founding documents of New Zealand.

Visitors to Wellington should definitely visit **Te Papa**, which is the museum of New Zealand. The museum has extensive Maori artifacts, as well as many galleries and hands-on centers for kids.

Take a ride on the **Wellington Cable Car**, which has been servicing Wellington for 110 years. The Cable Car museum is free, so have a wander, and then jump on the cable car from the CBD to the **Botanic Garden**. With over 25 hectares of floral displays and native bush, make sure you take a walk through the rose garden, and keep an eye out for the carving and sculptures scattered amongst the grounds.

If you're in the mood for some exercise take a walk up to **Mount Victoria** to see a spectacular view of the city, and follow it up with a trip to the parliament buildings, where you can have a free guided tour around parliament. This is a good way to learn about politics in New Zealand, and the tour is worth it for the architecture alone.

Wellington is the best place to go for boutique and vintage shopping, with quirky stores dotted around the city. The City Market is located in the Chaffers dock building every Sunday from 8.30am until 12.30pm. Here you'll find some of the best local food and wine, as well as gorgeous handmade gifts and more. One of the best shopping attractions is the **Wellington Underground Market**, which is open from 10am until 4pm every Saturday. Here you'll find unique goods from local businesses and emerging artists. There is often live music as well, and you'll be sure to find the perfect gift or souvenir.

Wellington had the 12th best quality of living in the world in 2009.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

fleece – овечья шерсть, ткань

sheaf – сноп

Cruz – созвездие Южного Креста

biodiversity – биоразнообразие

fungal – грибковый

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

- 1. What are the national symbols of New Zealand?*
- 2. What is the geographical position of New Zealand?*
- 3. How does the country's economy develop?*
- 4. What is the major population of New Zealand?*
- 5. What are the main features of climate, flora and fauna in New Zealand?*

6. *What is the predominant religion of the country?*
7. *What are the largest cities of New Zealand? What are the most interesting attractions?*

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. *Интересы монарха на территории страны представляет генерал-губернатор (Governor-General), назначаемый монархом по рекомендации премьер-министра, как правило, сроком на пять лет.*
2. *С 1967 года на пост генерал-губернатора назначаются только граждане Новой Зеландии.*
3. *В апреле 2013 года в стране были легализованы однополые браки.*
4. *Оригинал текста гимна написан на английском языке, официальная версия имеет также перевод на язык маори. Традиционно на государственных мероприятиях сначала звучит версия на языке маори, затем — версия на английском языке.*
5. *Ещё около 1000 лет назад, до появления на островах постоянных поселений человека, исторически полностью отсутствовали млекопитающие. Исключение составляли два вида летучих мышей и обитающие в прибрежных водах киты, морские львы и морские котики. Позднее первые европейские переселенцы привезли свиней, коров, коз, мышей и кошек.*
6. *С каждым годом увеличивается количество фильмов, снятых в стране. Особую известность получили трилогия «Властелин колец», кинофильмы «Последний самурай» и «Хроники Нарнии».*
7. *Исторически искусство маори носило в основном религиозный смысл. Основными его направлениями являлись резьба по дереву или кости, плетение, танцы и татуировка.*

ЛИТЕРАТУРА

1. Бонди, Е.А. Английский язык для студентов историков / Е.А. Бонди. - М.: Астрель, АСТ, 2001. – 398 с.
2. Голицынский Ю.Б. Great Britain. / Ю.Б. Голицынский - С.-П.Каро, 2006. – 477 с.
3. Голицынский Ю.Б. The USA. / Ю.Б. Голицынский - С.-П.Каро, 2008. – 458 с.
4. Занина Е. 95 устных тем по английскому языку/ Е. Занина. – М. Айрис Пресс Рольф, 1999. -300 с.
5. Киндерсли Д. Великобритания / Д. Киндерсли / - М., 2003.
6. Колодяжная Л. This is Great Britain / Л. Колодяжная – М. Айрис Пресс Рольф, 1999. – 158 с.
7. Леонович О.А. Страноведение Великобритании / О.А. Леонович – М. Издательство КДУ, 2005. - 252 с.
8. Михайлов Н.Н. Лингвострановедение Англии / Н.Н. Михайлов – М. Академия, 2006. – 203 с.
9. Мюллер В.М. Новый Англо-русский словарь / В.М. Мюллер. – М. Издательство Русский язык, 1999. – 879 с.
10. Овчинников В. Корень дуба / В. Овчинников – М. Издательство Советская Россия, 1987. – 80 с.
11. Павлоцкий В.М. British Studies / В.М. Павлоцкий. – С.-П. Базис, Каро, 2002. – 413 с.
12. Переверзева О. Англия, сэр! / О. Переверзева // Женский журнал. - 2006. - № 1. – С. 48-51.
13. Полупан В.Л., Полупан А.П. English-Speaking Countries. / В.Л. Полупан, А.П. Полупан – Х. Академия, 2000. – 208 с.
14. Сатинова В.Ф. Great Britain / В.Ф. Сатинова. – М. Высшая школа, 1998. – 255 с.
15. O’Driscoll James. Great Britain / James O’Driscoll/ - Oxford University Press, , 1997. – 224 с.
16. Ellen M. Katz Transparency in Government / Ellen M. Katz – Office of International information programs, 2001. – 11 с.
17. Farrell Mark British life and Institutions / Mark Farrell/ - L. Chancerel International Publishers Ltd, 2000. – 130 с.

18. Hornby A.S. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary / A.S. Hornby/ - Oxford University Press, 2004. – 1539 c.
19. Introducing Western Europe / - Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004. – 120 c.
20. Oxford guide to British and American Culture / - Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005. – 533 c.
21. Room A. Dictionary of Britain / A. Room / - Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996. -